



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

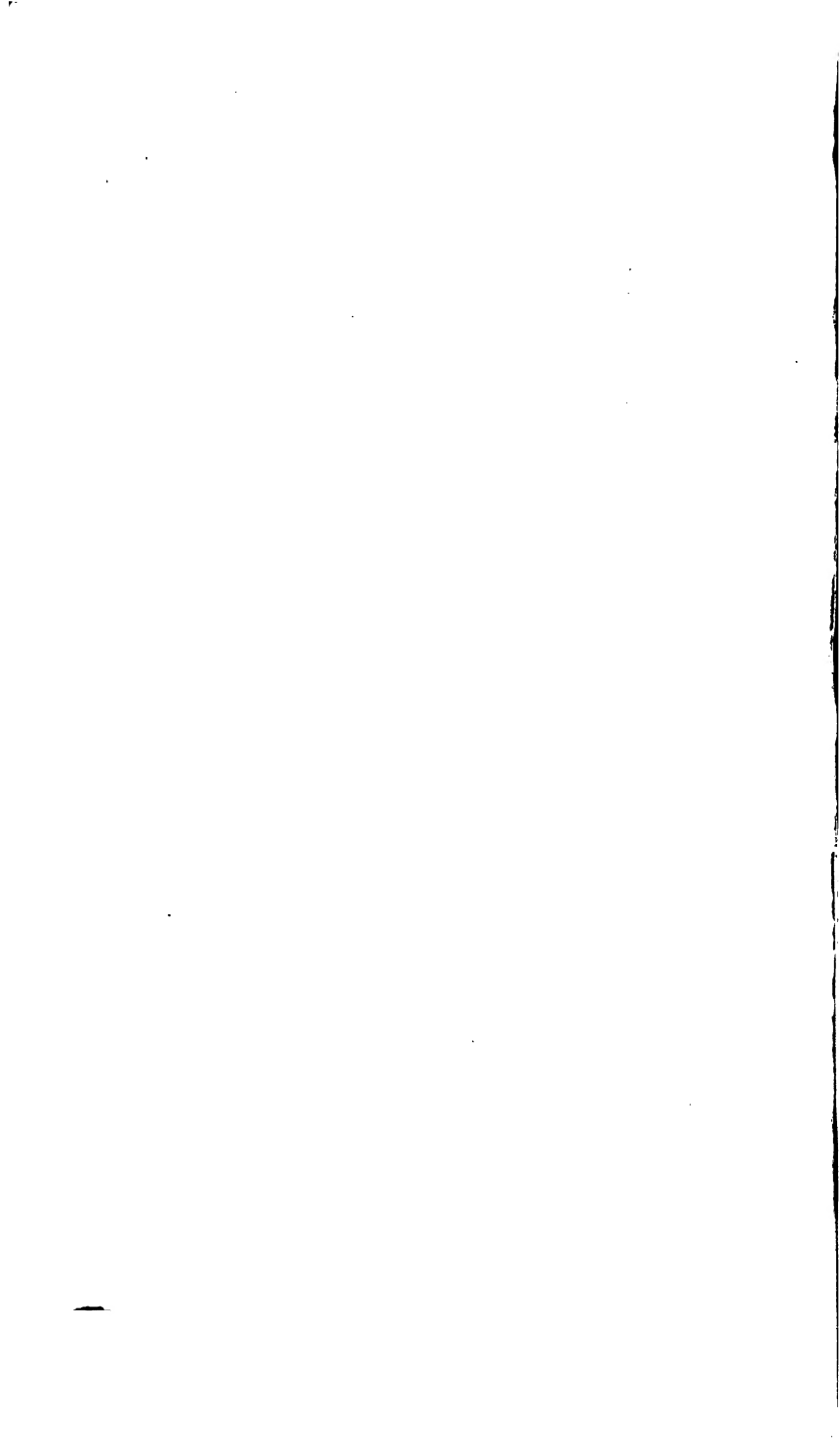
About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>



GL
Gor

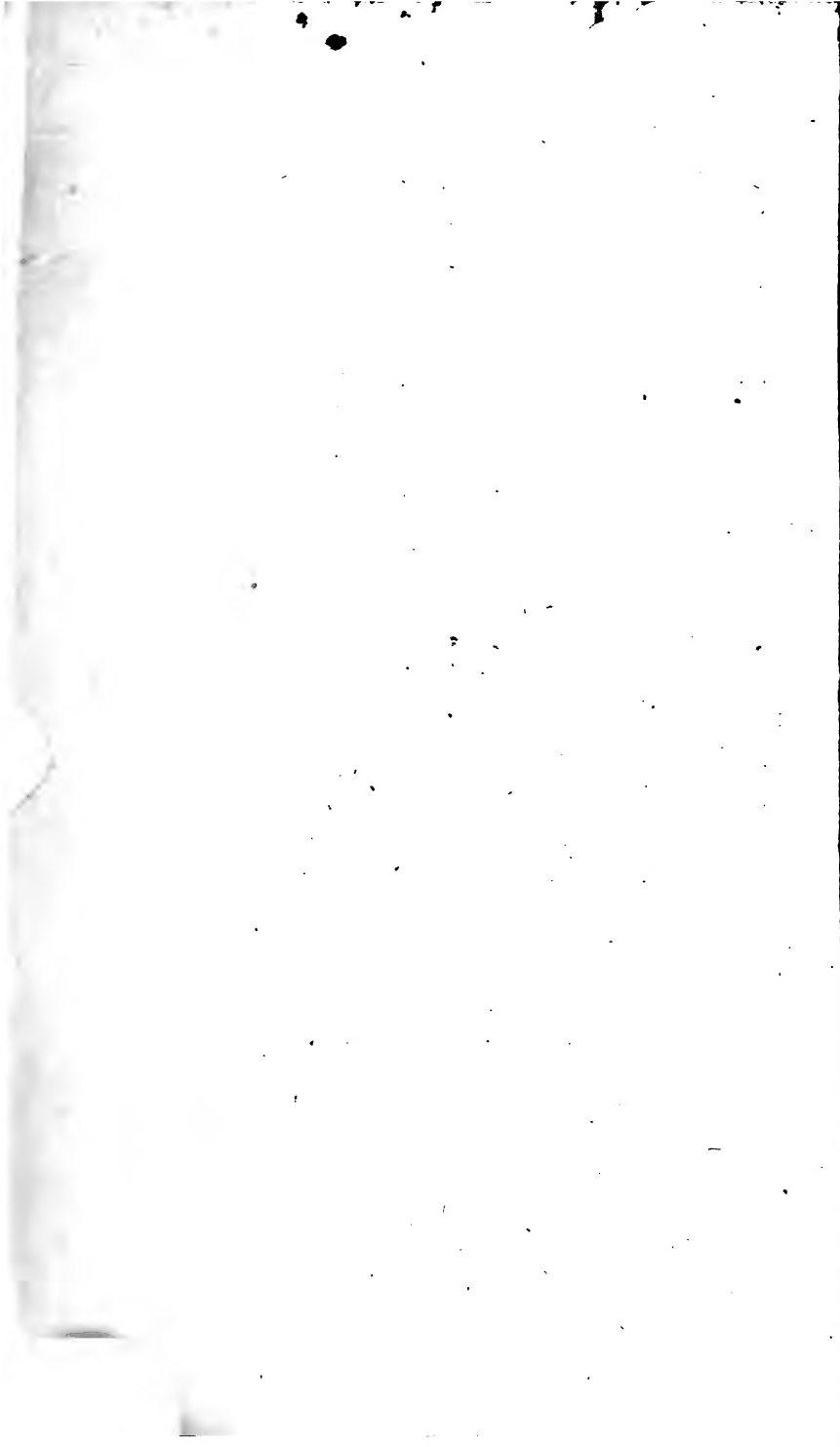




W

GLF

Gordon
v







Peter the Great
Emperor of Russia

(From an Original painting in the possession of Alex. Gordon of Dorlaithers Esq)

THE
HISTORY
OF
PETER the GREAT,
EMPEROR of RUSSIA.

To which is prefixed, A short
GENERAL HISTORY of the COUNTRY,
FROM THE
RISE of that MONARCHY:
836 ✓ AND AN
Account of the AUTHOR's Life.
IN TWO VOLUMES.
VOL. I.

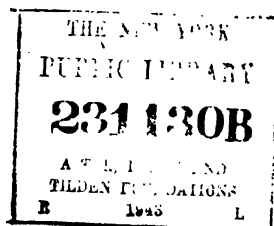
By ALEXANDER GORDON of ACHINTOUL, Esq; *several*
Years a Major-General in the CZAR's Service.

Illustrated with a Map of RUSSIA; the Heads of Czar PETER, Prince
MENZEROFF and the AUTHOR, engraved from original Paintings.

ABERDEEN:

Printed by and for F. DOUGLASS and W. MURRAY:

Sold by C. HITCH and L. HAWES in *Paternoster Row*, London; by
the Booksellers of *Edinburgh* and *Glasgow*; and at *Aberdeen* by the
said F. DOUGLASS and W. MURRAY at their Shops in the
Broadgate. M, DCC, LV.



Entered in STATIONERS-HALL according
to Act of Parliament.

Ellis 11 Feb. 1943 - 2 Vol



Major General Gordon

From an Original painting in the possession of Alex. Gordon of Portlithers, Esq.

A S H O R T
A C C O U N T

O F T H E

A U T H O R ' S L I F E .

MAJOR-GENERAL GORDON was His birth the eldest son of *Alexander Gordon* and family. of *Achintoul*, one of the senators of the college of justice, in the reign of King *James VII.* by his wife, *Isobel Gray*, daughter to *Gray of Braik*, brother to Lord *Gray*; and was born the 27th of *December* 1669.

HIS grandfather, *George Gordon* of *Cocklarachie* was twice married: by his first wife, a daughter of *Seaton of Pitmedden*, he had two sons, *Alexander* (our Author's father) and *James*, the predecessor of *Gordon of Ardmellie*. By his second wife, a daughter of *Frazer of Philorth*, (the predecessor

of Lord *Salton*) he had another son; of whom, *Gordon of Cocklarachie* is descended. He purchased the estate of *Achintoul*, and gave it to *Alexander* his eldest son.

How soon our Author was of a proper age, he was put to a country school, where
 He is sent abroad. he continued till he was fourteen, when his father sent him to *Paris* to prosecute his studies. He continued there till after the revolution in 1688, when he gave way to the natural bent of his genius, by entering
 Enters into the military as a Cadet. himself a Cadet in one of the companies raised at the desire of King *James VII.* to assist the *French King* in the wars he then had in *Catalonia* *. In this service he carried a musket two campaigns, and behaved so well, that he was generally esteemed by all who knew him: on his return, he had a
 Captain's

* In these companies there were besides our Author a great many other *Scots* gentlemen, among whom were, the late Major *Buchan* of *Achmacoy*, Colonel *Irvine* son to *Irvine of Cults*, Robert *Arbuthnot* afterwards banker at *Paris*, John *Gray* of *Aberdeen*, Colonel *Wauchop* of the family of *Nydrie*, and — *Graim* son to *Graim of Braco*, who afterwards became a capuchin, was well known by the name of Father *Graim*, and only died last year at *Boulogne* in *France*.

The AUTHOR's Life.

v

Captain's commission bestowed on him by *Lewis XIV.*
Lewis XIV. Lewis XIV. makes him a Captain.

HE did not continue long in the *French* service, but came over to *Scotland* and lived with his father till the year 1692 or 1693, when he again went abroad; and the first accounts of him were from *Russia*.
He returns to Scotland, but goes again abroad.

HERE he soon got acquainted with Lieutenant-general *Patrick Gordon* of *Ach-leuchries*, then General in chief of all the *Russian* forces, who introduced him to the Czar. Tho' the General was always his fast friend, his future preferment was not intirely owing to his interest: his first commission in the *Russian* service, was bestowed upon him in a way which does honour to the memory of *Peter* the Great. Soon after his arrival in *Russia* he was invited to a marriage, where a good many young gentlemen of the best families in the country were present. Few nations are fond of foreigners; and the *Russians* in particular, are too apt to despise them. When these gentlemen were warm with their liquor,
Upon what occasion he got his first commission in the Russian service.
some

some of them spoke very disrespectfully of foreigners in general, and of the *Scots* in particular; they even went the length of personal abuse. Mr. *Gordon*, who to his last hour had a strong passion for his country, could not hear it abused by any body, without resenting the insult. He modestly represented to them the injustice of such indiscriminate satire,---acknowledged there were bad, but insisted there were also good men in all countries,---begged, they would not lay him under the disagreeable necessity of quarrelling with them, by enlarging further on such a grating subject;-----and told them, that it was unworthy gentlemen to be influenced by vulgar prejudices. The mildness of his reproof, like oil poured upon the fire, only served to inflame these brave fellows, who exclaimed against foreigners and *Scotland*, more than ever. When he could bear their insolence no longer, he gave the one who sat next to him a blow on the temple, which brought him on the floor; in an instant, he and other five were upon Mr. *Gordon*, and seemed determined to make him fall a victim to their national prejudice;

judice; but our Author not in the least intimidated by their number, in a few minutes obliged them to retreat, and had the glory of the victory in this very unequal combat. Tho' they used no other weapons but their fists, Mr. *Gordon's* were so weighty, and bestowed with so good will, that his antagonists bore the marks of them for several weeks. Next day a complaint was given in to Czar *Peter*, wherein Mr. *Gordon* was represented in the worst light imaginable. His majesty thought it a very singular thing to have a complaint of this nature brought before him, when attended with such disgraceful circumstances on the part of the complainers; he therefore, immediately ordered Mr. *Gordon* to be sent for: our Author, tho' no man was less a coward, owned that this message made him tremble; however, as it behoved to be obeyed, he instantly waited on the Czar, who putting on a very stern countenance, asked him how he came to be so turbulent, and whether the charge brought against him was just? Mr. *Gordon* told his majesty the occasion of the quarrel with so much ingenuity, spoke so modestly

Beats six
men.

A com-
plaint gi-
ven in to
the Czar,

of

who
makes
Mr. Gordon
a Major.

of his own behaviour, and seemed so sorry to have incurred the Czar's displeasure, that the affair ended in a manner quite contrary to the expectations of his enemies. The Czar, after hearing him very patiently, said, ' Well, Sir, your accusers have done you justice, by allowing that you beat six men: I also will do you justice.' On saying this, he withdrew, and in a few minutes returned with a Major's commission, which he presented to Mr. Gordon with his own hand. This anecdote of our Author's history he once told, and we believe, never but once; not out of vanity, for no man had a larger share of modesty, but in an accidental conversation on the fierceness of the Czar's disposition, and how much his displeasure was dreaded by his greatest subjects.

THE favours of the great can never have an ill effect, but upon shallow and ignoble minds, when judiciously bestowed, as in the present case, they answer the noblest purposes; and we are persuaded, this early mark of the Czar's favour, laid in our
Author

Author the foundation of that esteem and veneration which he continued to have for *Peter* the Great to the last hour of his life; and was a noble incitement to that bravery and intrepidity which so greatly distinguished his after conduct.

THE Czar, who was well acquainted with the character of every officer who commanded under him, soon discovered that his favour had not been ill bestowed upon Major *Gordon*, and a few months thereafter made him a Lieutenant-colonel. He had scarce been three years in his service when he got the command of a regiment.

He gets a Lieutenant-colonel's commission, and afterwards a regiment.

HE was present at the taking of *Asoph* from the *Turks* in 1696, and had frequent encounters with the *Tartars*. The troops under his command, animated by his example, and inured to a strict tho' not a severe discipline, were amongst the first in the *Russian* army who distinguished themselves in the field, and expressed a just concern for the honour of their country; which

Was present at the taking of *Asoph* in 1696.

The AUTHOR'S Life.

Charles XII. had not only invaded, but affected to treat with so much contempt.

His marriage.

IN the year 1699 or 1700, he married his friend General *Patrick Gordon's* daughter, then the widow of Colonel *Strasburgh*, a *German*; by whom he had several children, who all died in their infancy.

Is taken prisoner at the battle of *Narva*.

HE was taken prisoner at the battle of *Narva*, and sent into *Sweden*, where he was detained for several years. No arguments could prevail upon the Czar to allow his lady, or indeed the ladies of any other foreign officers to repair to them: perhaps he thought that detaining in his power such dear pledges, was the strongest security he could have of their attachment to his interest and service.

Is released after several years confinement, and made a Major-general.

COLONEL *Gordon* was at last exchanged with *Einschild*, a *Swedish* Colonel, whom the *Russians* had taken prisoner in *Livonia*. A few days after he joined the *Russian* army, the Czar advanced him to the rank of a Brigadier, and soon thereafter made him a Major-general.

As

As the Czar had great confidence in General *Gordon's* conduct and bravery, he generally pitched upon him to go on the most hazardous exploits. Soon after his arrival from his *Swedish* confinement an occasion of that kind offered, when *Charles XII.* was to cross the *Disna*, in order to join the Hettman *Mazepa*. *Peter*, who was determined to dispute this pass warmly, ordered General *Gordon*, on the head of a battalion of grenadiers, three regiments of foot, and four regiments of dragoons, with eight field-pieces, to oppose his passage over the river. As preventing the *Swedes* to cross this river, seemed of the last importance to the *Russians*, General *Gordon*, with the officers and soldiers under his command, went cheerfully on; determined to make a resolute defence. He came up with the enemy on the 21st of *October* 1708, and about six at night the *Swedes* attempted to cross the river on floats of trees, which they had prepared for that purpose, but were often beat back by General *Gordon's* detachment. The firing continued on both sides without intermission, till eleven o'clock,

Is sent by the Czar on a very hazardous exploit.

The King of Sweden attempts to cross the *Disna*, and is warmly received by General *Gordon*.

The *Russians* obliged to retreat.

when the *Russians'* ammunition was entirely spent. The General had sent several adjutants to the main army, which lay at a place called *Verowich*, about seven leagues distant, desiring a fresh supply; but not a pound was sent him. At last, to his great mortification, he received an order from Marshal *Sheremetoff*, to retreat and draw off the troops in the best manner he could. Notwithstanding the darkness of the night, and the close fire of the enemy, he carried off the artillery and wounded men. In this action, the *Russians* had about eight hundred killed, and nine hundred wounded. The *Swedes* were computed to have lost about two thousand. The General imputed his not having a supply of ammunition sent him, to Prince *Menzekoff*, who had a pique against him; and perhaps intended by this, to ruin him in the esteem of the Czar: however, his scheme had not the desired success; for his majesty, abundantly satisfied that General *Gordon* had done his duty as a brave officer, never once insinuated the least suspicion of his conduct on that occasion.

IT was hardly possible that two cha-
 racters so opposite as those of *Menzekoff*
 and General *Gordon* could live in good
 terms with one another: the one a design-
 ing sycophant, practised in the low arts of
 cunning and dissimulation; no less distin-
 guished for his insolence to his inferiors,
 than his abject cringing to his superiors;
 raised from obscurity by the favour of his
 sovereign, not on account of the rectitude
 of his principles, but entirely for the quick-
 ness of his parts, and his fitness for being
 the tool of an arbitrary Prince. The o-
 ther, brave and open, born a gentleman,
 unskilled in the arts of courtiers, raised by
 his merit, and respected for his good beha-
 viour.

SOMETIME before the battle of *Pnl-*
tawa, General *Gordon* was sent into *Po-*
land, along with General *Goltz* and Prince
Galitzen, to oppose the *Swedish* army com-
 manded by General *Craffow*, and the *Poles*
 and *Lithuanians* in the interest of *Stanislaus*.
 The *Russian* Generals had a body of about
 ten thousand men, and came up with the
Poles

Poles at a place called *Podkamien*, in *Black-Russia*, where an engagement ensued, in which the *Russians* had the victory. On this defeat of the *Poles*, King *Stanislaus* and General *Craffow* with the troops under their command, marched back into *Great Poland*: General *Goltz* pursued them till he joined the Crown-generals at *Limberg*; Prince *Galitzen* was recalled to his command of the guards; and General *Gordon* where he obtains several advantages over the enemy. had the command of the infantry. He remained in that country a considerable time, and obtained several advantages over the enemy; for the particulars whereof, we refer to the VIII. and IX. books of the ensuing history: only, it may be here observed, that he brought to *Scotland* with him several standards and military trophies, which he had taken at different times from the *Poles*.

Is sent to assist Prince Ragotsky. HE was afterwards sent into *Transylvania*, to assist Prince *Ragotsky* against the house of *Austria*, where his service was so agreeable to that Prince, that he made him considerable presents; amongst others, several

veral tons of the best *Tokay* wine; some hogsheads of which he brought to *Scotland*.

On his return to *Poland* from *Transylvania* in 1711, he got account of his father's death, (which had happened the preceeding year) whereupon he applied to court for a permission to leave the *Russian* service, intending to return to his native country with his lady, and take possession of his paternal estate. Which permission having obtained, under the hand of Prince *Menzekoff*, he left *Poland* (after delivering over the troops to the officer who succeeded him in command) and came down to *Dantzick*, from thence to *Holland*, where he took passage for *England*, and arrived at *Harwich* in September 1711.

Gets account of his father's death, and quits the *Russian* service.

Arrives in *England*.

As he had now no further thoughts of going abroad, soon after his arrival in *Scotland*, he caused make an addition to his house of *Achintoul*; and in 1712 purchased the barony of *Laithers* in *Aberdeenshire*.

Settles on his estate in *Scotland*.

HE resided sometimes at *Aberdeen*, sometimes at *Edinburgh*, till the year 1715, when

Is con- when the troubles of his country broke
 cerned in the rebel- out, in which he was concerned, and acted
 lion 1715. as Lieutenant-general under the Earl of
Mar. In that station he commanded the
 highland clans at *Sheriffmuir*; and any ad-
 vantage they had over the King's troops,
 was generally attributed to his skill and con-
 duct.

Conducts WHEN the rebel army broke up from
 the clans *Perth*, he conducted the clans along the
 to Aber- coast to *Aberdeen*, and from that place still
 deen. further north, without suffering them to
 commit any injury or depredation in the
 towns or countries through which they
 passed. This retreat may be reckoned a-
 mongst the clearest proofs of his military
 skill: for, how difficult must it be to re-
 strain undisciplined troops, especially on a
 retreat, and when they know themselves
 already obnoxious to the laws of their
 country in the highest degree. The inha-
 bitants of those parts through which he
 marched, have still a great veneration for
 his memory.

GENERAL

GENERAL Gordon was included amongst others who were attainted of treason for being concerned in that rebellion; but escaped by a *misnomer* in the act of attainder, being designed by the name of *Thomas* instead of *Alexander*, which saved his life and fortune. He kept private in the highlands and adjacent isles, till the year 1717, when he went to *France* with the late Marquis of *Seaforth*, where he continued till 1727.

Is attainted by a wrong name, and goes abroad.

IN 1724 he was offered a Lieutenant-general's commission in the *Spanish* service, which he declined, chusing rather to return to his own country, and spend the rest of his days in retirement, when he should incline to leave *France*.

Refuses a Lieutenant-general's commission in the *Spanish* service.

FROM 1727 that he returned to *Scotland* till 1739, when his lady died, he enjoyed all the happiness that results from a country retirement, an agreeable neighbourhood and universal respect.

Returns to *Scotland* in 1727.

His second marriage, SOMETIME after his lady's death, he married to his second wife Mrs. *Margaret Moncrief*, eldest daughter to Sir *Thomas Moncrief* of that ilk; with whom he lived and death. very happily till the end of *July* 1752, when he died in the 82d year of his age, of a tedious illness occasioned by the stranguary and gravel. He was buried on the 5th of *August* in his father's burial-place at *Marnoch-kirk*; and left no issue by any of his wives.

His character.

HE was distinguished for probity, benevolence, and simplicity of manners, invariable in his friendships, generous and reconcilable to his enemies, a hospitable neighbour, and a most indulgent husband. To sum up his character in a few words, he was a good soldier, and an honest man.

FOR several years before his death, he amused himself at leisure hours, by writing the ensuing History, which he brings down to the death of *Peter* the Great. During the most remarkable period of that Prince's reign, he was in the country he writes of, and

and often present at the scenes he describes. After he returned to *Scotland*, he kept a correspondence with some gentlemen in the Czar's service, which, with the public notices of affairs in *Russia*, gave him sufficient knowledge how things went after he left it.

As his military genius discovered itself very early, it entirely diverted him from the study of polite literature; and his having spent so much of his time in foreign countries, at the period of life when elegance and correctness of style may be most easily acquired, will, we hope, have some weight with those who might otherways be disposed to criticise upon his language. It will be unnecessary for such to tell the public, that the Author of the History of *Peter* the Great was no scholar; that his style is unadorned with the flowers of rhetoric, and his periods not harmonious; all this he modestly acknowledges: veracity and a plain narration of facts, is all he pretends to. Those who knew him will not doubt of his probity; those who knew him not, we are

An apology for his style.

PERHAPS not a few will condemn me for attempting this work, after several accounts of *Russia*, and even of *Peter* the Great, had been published by others. To this I shall only reply, that some of these authors have been too general in their accounts of this Prince's military exploits, and have filled up their books with manifestos, declarations, &c. Others have misrepresented him, given a very untrue account of the number of his troops, and assigned motives for his conduct, which never existed but in their own imaginations. I was either present at the most remarkable transactions mentioned in the ensuing History, or had my information from those who were, and who I had all the reason in the world to believe, would not have imposed upon me; and the reader will give me leave to say, that I have had a strict regard to truth, throughout the whole.

I have spent a great many leisure hours very agreeably in compiling this History; the motives which induced me to undertake it, are of little importance to the public:

I shall only observe, that no man who was acquainted with the civil and military state of *Russia*, in Czar *Peter's* minority, and was a witness of the almost incredible reformation which he introduced in both, could think with indifference of him, or the great change which he almost instantaneously made upon a barbarous and uncivilized people.

THIS was long the subject of conversation over all *Europe*; and every tongue did justice to the Czar's extraordinary merit: what was so universally applauded by his contemporaries, will certainly meet with the approbation of succeeding ages; and it is to be hoped, his example will induce princes yet unborn, to make the happiness of their subjects the great rule of their conduct. His success invites them; and may the like, or better, always attend them in such noble attempts! Nor is such an example without its uses to the bulk of mankind: the infinite hazards he run, and the fatigues he underwent in accomplishing his great and good designs, may excite people in lower stations,

to the diligent practice of those duties which they owe to their countries, to their families, and to themselves.

I have endeavoured to do justice to the Czar's personal character; neither magnifying his virtues, nor attempting to conceal his foibles; he has a just title to the allowances due to human nature: if the reader grant this, I need scarce plead for those usually made to those in such exalted stations.

WITH the same impartiality I have spoken of the Empress *Katharine*; a character, upon the whole, as extraordinary as any to be found in antient or modern story. Some writers have perhaps exceeded in her praise; others have wrote of her as if they envied her great qualities, and seem to have had an ill-natured pleasure in narrating the meanness of her original: I cannot comprehend what could draw from Mr. *de Voltaire* such uncharitable expressions, as that, *she had none of the virtues of her sex*, or that *she was a woman sans pudeur*: she had a
greatness

greatness of soul, a strength of judgment, and an equanimity of temper, rarely to be found in her own or the other sex; and had Mr. *de Voltaire* instead of the *virtues* said the *weaknesses* of her sex, his account had been less exceptionable. The Czar, who was a good judge, and much above vulgar prejudices, was well satisfied of her merit, and ready upon all occasions to acknowledge it.

PERHAPS some people may imagine that I have exagrate in the account of the natural riches, and plenty of the country; in general I have not: tho' it may be here observed that the *Ostiacks*, the *Samoides*, and others in the northern parts of the Czar's dominions, are really a very poor and wretched people; they have neither bread, roots, nor herbs, but live upon dried fish, which they dip in train-oil. They make a very despicable appearance, both men and women, and are as rude in their manners as in their looks and way of living. Notwithstanding all this, their desires are so moderate, that they seem to be

tolerably happy; and when I call them *poor* and *wretched*, it is only on a comparative view of their situation with that of others of the human species. Their religion till of late years, was of a very shocking kind; their deity, a mishapen block of wood, with very little resemblance of a man: this deity they thought to make propitious to them by rubbing its lips with grease, which they always did before they went a-fishing; and if they had bad success, the idol got a whipping on their return. While we pity the stupidity of these poor wretches, and wonder at their impiety in whipping the deity they adored, we ought to consider, that presumptuously to offend a Being whom we know to be infinitely powerful, and to find fault with a Providence which we acknowledge cannot err, is no less impious and absurd. In the year 1713 and 1714, there were above five thousand of the *Ostiacks* converted to the Christian faith, by the pious labours of a good Archbishop, who met with great opposition from their idolatrous priests. This venerable prelate was at last obliged to leave
the

the country on account of his great age, and the coldness of the climate; but it is to be hoped, that others will carry on what he has so happily begun.

I have not been so full on some particulars, as more inquisitive and learned writers have been; and many public papers are purposely omitted, having resolved to be as brief as was consistent with perspicuity.

PERHAPS it will be objected to this History, that the scenes it describes are long since over, and that they were at too great a distance to be very interesting to *British* readers: to this it may be answered, that the greatness and singularity of this Prince's genius, sets him on a footing with the most celebrated heroes of antiquity, and must render the accounts of his conduct interesting to latest posterity; and, that the History of a Prince who had the greatness of soul to travel into *England*, and other foreign countries, in the station of a private man, to acquire the useful knowledge of making millions of people wiser and happier, can

scarce be supposed indifferent to the lovers of mankind; not to mention that through the whole of his life he was a warm friend to the interests of *Great Britain*.

I am very sensible that the style of the ensuing work lies open to criticism; but the good-natured reader will be pleased to consider, that the writer was a soldier, who spent the earlier part of his life in foreign countries, and in too busy scenes to be at leisure to attend to the niceties of language. I did not design to dress out a poetical hero; neither the character nor the conduct of *Peter the Great* stand in need of pompous language to set them off; a true narration of facts is very consistent with a plain style, and that is all I pretend to.

CONTENTS

OF THE

FIRST VOLUME.

B O O K I.

INTRODUCTION. *A general description of Russia; the nature of the country; its productions, commodities, seasons, &c. the genius of the nation; its origin, and conversion to the Christian faith; its increase and wars. The various revolutions of the empire to the reign of Czar Michael Theodorowich Romanow.*

B O O K II.

Michael Theodorowich Romanow is elected Czar. Succeeded by his son Alexis. Troubles in the beginning of his reign. Stenko Razin, a Doncossack, his rebellion. Takes Astracan and other places. Marches with a great army against Moscow. Defeated. Wars with Poland and Turkey. Alexis dies. Theodore succeeds, and dies without issue. The insurrections of the Strelitzes. The two Czars;

Czars, John and Peter, crowned. They send ambassadors to foreign courts. The designs of Princess Sophia, &c.

B O O K III.

The Emperor Peter the Great, his first and second expedition against Asoph. A conspiracy discovered against him in the city of Moscow. His travels into foreign countries. The dangerous revolt of the Strelitzes in his absence. Their defeat. His return to his own dominions. The punishment of the rebels.

B O O K IV.

The Czar makes peace with the Turks. Breaks his old guards the Strelitzes. Raises an army of forty thousand foot, and twenty thousand dragoons. Begins to reform his country. Declares war against Sweden. Marches at the head of a great part of his new raised army, and besieges Narva. Is defeated.,

B O O K V.

The Dutch and other foreign ministers endeavour to make peace betwixt the Czar and the King of Sweden, but without effect. The Czar and King Augustus meet together at Birzen, where they renew their alliance.

alliance. The Czar marches with his army into Ingria, takes Marienburgh and Iamgorod. The Russians gain several victories, particularly one at Stagriltz; after which, the Czar takes Notteburgh and Nyenchance. He erects his favourite town and citadel St. Petersburg; then builds the fort Cronstat. The Russians beat the Swedes at Sisterbeck, after which the Czar makes his triumphant entry into Moscow.

B O O K VI.

The King of Sweden causes elect a new King of Poland. The Russians besiege and take Derpt and Narva. Marshal Sheremetoff gives battle to General Levenhaupt, after which the Russians besiege and take Mitau, &c. The republick of Poland enter at last into an alliance with the Czar against Sweden. King Augustus and Marshal Ogilvie stand the King of Sweden at Grodno.

B O O K VII.

The King of Sweden marches into Saxony; the battle of Calish: his treaty with King Augustus: returns to Poland. Sets out after the Russians; beats them at Holowfin. Suffers much for want of all necessaries

series of life. The Czar beats the Swedes at Lefno. The King of Sweden passes the Disna; is joined by the Hettman of the Ukraine Cossacks, Mazepa: his life and character. Prince Menzekoff attacks, pillages and burns Baturin.

B O O K VIII.

The Russian Ambassador's usage at London. The Czar orders a body of troops into Poland. The Russians beat the Poles at Podkamien; oblige King Stanislaus, with General Crassow, to retire into Pomernia. The King of Sweden attacks and takes Vopruz. Then marches and besieges Pultawa: the decisive battle there. The rejoicings at Moscow and elsewhere on the victory.

L I S T

L I S T

O F T H E

S U B S C R I B E R S.

A

JAMES ABERNETHY of May-
en, Esq;

Robert Arbuthnot younger of Haddo, Esq;

Mr. John Alexander, Advocate in Aberdeen,

Mr. Colin Allan, Goldsmith there,

Mr. Alexander Angus, Bookseller there.

B

Dr. Thomas Blackwell, Principal of the
Marischal college, Aberdeen,

James Burnet younger of Minboddo, Esq;

Advocate in Edinburgh,

James Brodie of Mureck, Esq;

Alexander Bisset of Lesendrum, Esq;

Alexander Bannerman of Frendraught, Esq;

Patrick Byres of Tonlay, Esq;

VOL. I.

c

Mr.

LIST of the

Mr. John Bowles, Printseller, London,
 Peter Barclay of Johnston, Esq;
 James Brands of Achlunies, Esq;

C

Alexander Calder of Afwanly, Esq;
 Thomas Carnegie younger of Craigo, Esq;

D

The Right Honourable Lady Mary Desford,
 The Honourable Lady Dunbar of Durn,
 Patrick Duff of Premnay, Esq;
 Alexander Duff of Cubih, Esq;
 John Douglas of Fechil, Esq;
 John Douglas of Tiliquohlie, Esq;
 Mr. James Duff, Advocate in Aberdeen,
 Captain George Duncan senior, of Aberdeen.

E

The Right Honourable the Countess of
 Errol,
 Thomas Erskine of Pittodrie, Esq;
 The Reverend Mr. Erskine at Muthil.

Sir

F

Sir Arthur Forbes of Craigievar, Bart.
 John Farquharson of Invercauld, Esq;
 Captain John Forbes of New,
 Jonathan Forbes of Brux, Esq;
 Captain Andrew Forbes younger of Bal-
 four,
 The Reverend Mr. Thomas Forbes, Mini-
 ster in Aberdeen,
 Dr. William Farquharson, Physician there,
 John Farrier, Book-binder there, two copies.

G

The Right Honourable Lord Adam Gor-
 don,
 Sir Archibald Grant of Monymusk, Bart.
 Dr. James Gordon of Pitlurg, Physician in
 Aberdeen,
 Benjamin Gordon of Balbythan, Esq;
 Arthur Gordon of Wardhouse, Esq;
 Charles Gordon of Abergeldy, Esq;
 James Gordon younger of Ardmelly, Esq;
 Alexander Gordon of Whiteley, Esq; Ad-
 vocate in Edinburgh,

John Gordon of Craig, Esq;
James Gordon of Badenscoth, Esq;
John Gordon younger of Cairnfield, Esq;
Charles Gordon of Achleuchries, Esq;
Patrick Gordon of Abuchay, Esq;
John Gordon of Baldorny, Esq;
John Gordon Cuming of Birness, Esq;
Dr. John Gordon, Physician in Montrose,
Captain Alexander Gordon in Aberdeen,
Mr. George Gordon of Comistie,
Mr. George Gordon, Professor of Oriental
languages in the King's college, Aber-
deen,
Mr. Thomas Gordon, Professor of Huma-
nity in the King's college there,
The Reverend Mr. John Gordon, one of the
Ministers of St. Paul's chapel, Aberdeen,
Mr. John Gordon, Merchant in Banff,
Mr. Hugh Gordon, Watchmaker in Aber-
deen,
Mr. Alexander Gordon, Merchant there,
Alexander Gairden of Troup, Esq;
Captain Alexander Grant of Grantsfield,
James Grant of Rothemurcus, Esq;
Mr. John Gillespie, Officer of Excise in
Oldmeldrum.

George

H

George Hay of Montblerie, Esq;
 James Hay of Cockla, Esq;
 Mr. Charles Hitch, Bookseller in London,
 Mr. Charles Hacket, Merchant in Aberdeen,
 Mr. James Hay, Dyer in Fivie.

I

James Irvine of Kingcausie, Esq;
 The Right Hon. Lady Mary Irvine,
 John Innes of Muirycald, Esq;
 Gilbert Jaffray of Kingswells, Esq;

K

The Right Honourable the Earl of Kintore.

L

John Leith of Leith-hall, Esq;
 George Leith of Overhall, Esq;
 Alexander Leith of Freefield, Esq;
 William Lesly of Melrofs, Esq;
 George Lesly of Eden, Esq;
 George Lesly of Rothy, Esq;
 Alexander Lesly of Warthill, Esq;

James

James Ligertwood of Skelmuir, Esq;
Dr. Thomas Livingston, Physician in Aberdeen,
Mr. James Leiper, Merchant there,
Mr. Alexander Lunan, Merchant in Philadelphia.

M

Major Arthur Maitland of Pitrichie, Esq;
Roderick Macleod of Cadboll, Esq; two copies,
William Mackintosh of Aberarder, Esq;
Mr. Thomas Mosman, Advocate in Aberdeen,
Mr. Alexander Milne, Merchant there,
Mr. James Murray, Merchant in Oldmeldrum.

N

Mr. William Nicol, Advocate in Aberdeen.

P

Her Grace the Dutchess Dowager of Perth,
Mr. Francis Peacock, Dancing-master in Aberdeen.

Sir

R

Sir James Reid of Barra, Bart.
 Hugh Rose of Clava, Esq;
 Mr. James Rose, Merchant in Aberdeen,
 Mr. Arthur Reid.

S

George Skene of that Ilk, Esq;
 James Shand of Craigellie, Esq;
 Dr. James Sanders, Physician in Banff,
 Mr. William Smith, Taylor and late Con-
 veeener of the trades in Aberdeen,
 Mr. David Shaw, Clerk and Partner in the
 Port-hill Factory there,
 Mr. James Strachan, Merchant in Bervie.

T

John Turner of Turnerhall, Esq;
 John Tyrie of Dunadeer, Esq;
 James Thomson of Portlethen, Esq;
 Mr. Robert Thomson, Town-Clerk of
 Aberdeen.

The

U

The Honourable Alexander Udny of t
Ilk, one of the Commissioners of
customs.

William Urquhart of Meldrum, Esq;

James Urquhart of Byth, Esq;

Duncan Urquhart of Burdgyards, Esq;

W

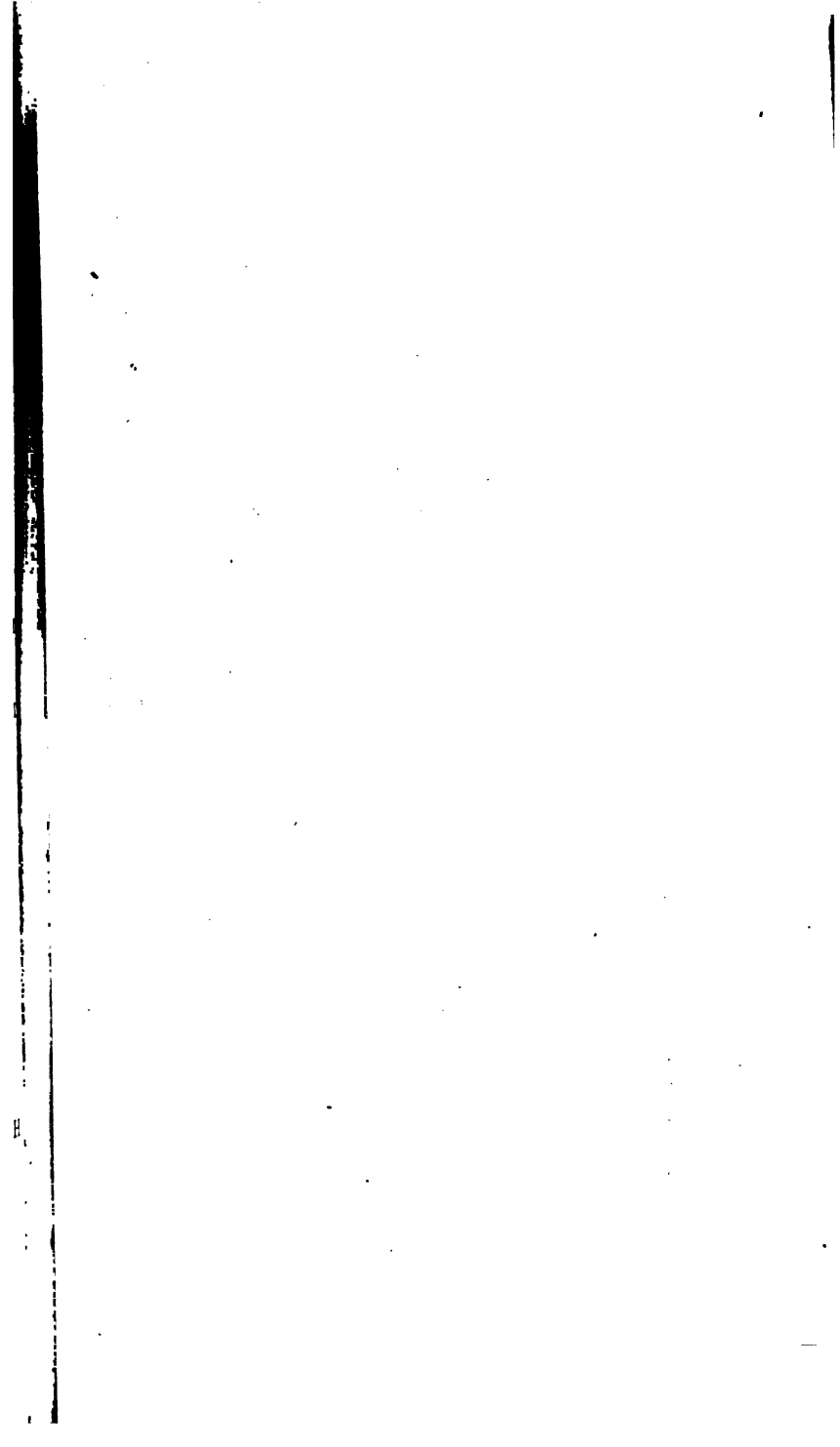
Mr. Patrick Wilson, Merchant in Aberdeen

James Wilson of Finzeach, Esq;

Mr. William Wise, Merchant in Stonehaven

Y

Robert Young of Oldbar, Esq;





Circle

Krasnoyarsk

Siberia

Angara R.

SIBERIA

Yenisey

Irkutsk

Baikal Lake

Angara R.

Tomsk

Enisey R.

Selenginsk

Khatanga

AT
CRY

USBECK TARTARS



SCALE
60 Miles to a Degree
60 120 180 240

V

S. Pinner Sculp

T H E
H I S T O R Y
O F

P E T E R the G R E A T, &c.

B O O K I.

The History of R U S S I A.

AS the reign of **PETER the GREAT** is **BOOK I.** distinguished by many remarkable events, scarce to be equalled in the annals of former ages, it may be necessary to give a short abridgment of the *Russian* history from the foundation of that monarchy, to this time. A general account of its strength, riches and extent, will prepare the reader's mind for the belief of facts, which, without such previous notice, might appear quite incredible. Introduction.

The little knowledge that the most part of *Europe* had of these north-east nations before this period, has occasioned some authors, not only to represent the history of this great empire as uncertain and obscure, but also to diminish the glorious actions of *Peter I.*

But if the impartial reader consider with attention, the situation and vast extent of this

VOL. I.

A

vast

BOOK vast empire, its strength and riches, the warlike

I. disposition of the inhabitants, and the great submission its different nations bear to their lawful sovereign, he will be easily persuaded that it might always have been capable, when rightly governed, not only to have topped with its neighbours, but to have enlarged its territories: though it must be owned, few princes have been equal to such vast undertakings, as those contained in the following sheets.

Its extent. The *Russian* empire is at present fully as extensive as all the rest of *Europe*, being situated between the 23^d and 125th degree of east longitude, and the 45th and 71st of north latitude; consequently, containing in length above 3000 miles, and in breadth about 1560; comprehending from *Russian Lapland*, adjoining to the *North-Cape*, or near to it, all that vast north-east continent from *Swetinoſe* to *Holy-Cape*; from thence south to the mouth of the great river *Amur*, all those countries lying along the said river to *Argunſkoy*, the last fortified town bordering upon *China*: then extending southward to *Silenginſkoy*, bordering upon *Mongal Tartary*; thence, west toward *Samarcand*, comprehending the kingdoms of *Dauria*, *Siberia*, *Câſan*, and *Aſtracan*; then almost the whole septentrional ſide of the *Caspian* ſea, comprehending *Derbent*, *Baku*, &c. and the meridional from *Gilan* to the river *Oſſa*; thence
along

along the *Black-sea*, *Asoph* only excepted, Book
 which now belongs to the *Turks*; then the L
Doncassocks, who inhabit the skirts and isles ~
 of the river *Don*, or *Tanais*: then westward
 it includes the whole *Russian Ukrain*, down
 almost to the mouth of the *Boristhenes*; and
 from thence northward, along the frontiers
 of *Poland*, *Lithuania* and *Courland*, the
 whole countries of *Livonia*, *Eastland*, *In-*
gria, and a great Part of *Carelia*; rich and
 fertile countries, situate on the *Baltick* sea;
 from thence north again, till it joins with
Russian Lapland.

The soil of these vast countries is general- Its soil.
 ly good, producing plenty of all kinds of
 grain; and towards the more southern parts
 they have as good fruits as *Italy* or *France*
 produce. About the city of *Moscow*, the
 soil is somewhat unfruitful, being sandy.

But it is to be considered, that not two
 thirds of this great empire is inhabited, oc-
 casioned partly by the neighbourhood of the
Tartars, whose incursions have been for-
 merly exceedingly troublesome to the *Russi-*
ans; those barbarians making no account of
 faith and alliance, but professing the trade of
 robbing, carried off the people where-ever
 they could come at them, and sold them to
 the *Turks* for slaves: but, since the *Russians*
 have built and fortified large towns on the
 frontiers, these incursions are not so frequent.

BOOK Their commodities for export are; flax,
 I. hemp, hides, leather, salt-fish, caviar, tal-
 low, wax, honey, pot-ashes, soap, train-
 oil; but especially fine furs, such as, fables,
 martins, black and white foxes, ermin, squir-
 rels, &c. and of late great quantities of grain
 has been exported from *Riga*, *Revel*, and o-
 ther ports on the *Baltick*, besides all man-
 ner of naval stores.

Its pro-
 duce.

The Emperor of *Russia* being an absolute Prince, to whom his subjects are obliged to pay obedience without reserve, he can raise upon any emergency, some hundred thousands of men. Vast revenues are annually brought into his treasury, which accrue to him not only from the common taxes, but from his having the monopoly of all the rich furs, and other choice commodities exported out of his dominions: all which, as well as the lives and fortunes of his greatest subjects, are at his sole disposal.

Descripti-
 on of the
 inhabi-
 tants.

The *Russians* are of a vigorous and healthy constitution, able to undergo all manner of hardships and fatigue; obedient and submissive to their Prince, and have become of late, lovers of martial discipline: all these things make this Emperor one of the most powerful Princes on earth, especially since this vastly extended empire, composed of so many kingdoms and great provinces, is all united under the same government.

Their

Their black cattle are large, and exceeding good; so are their sheep, consequently their veal and lamb: they are all fed during the winter-time with hay. They have plenty of tame fowl, such as, turkies, ducks, geese, &c. great variety of wild fowl, such as, bufards, capercellies, black-cocks, gilliantes, partridges, red and grey pheasants, muir-fowl, woodcocks, snipes, rails, quails, wild ducks, geese, swans; with a thousand other kinds of small fowl. They have plenty of deer of all kinds, likewise roe; infinite numbers of goats, wild and tame; with two kinds of hares, one a size larger than the other, which they call ruffaky, and which never change their colour: the other kind are such as our common hares, and in the winter-time turn as white as snow. They have swine, both tame and wild, in great numbers; also wild horses, but of a small size, their hair all over the body is curled like a water-dog: their foxes are of different kinds and colours, black, white, and red: the black is the most valuable. In *Siberia*, they have fables, martins, ermins, squirrels, bears, and wolves. Their horses are very good and strong, but not of a large size, few of them exceeding fourteen hands high, except it be some of foreign brood: they have few mules and asses, but plenty of dromedaries and camels: they have hawks of all kinds, particularly a white

BOOK white one, which is much esteemed. The

I. *Russians* are exceeding good falconers, and great lovers of sport. Though they have very good greyhounds, they are not as yet got into the way of them. They have to the north of *Astracan*, a kind of white bears, different in their size and shape, and which have a finer fur than the ordinary sort.

Their seasons.

Their seasons are very regular and uniform; and there never was a bad crop heard of in that country; from *Novogrod*, to the more southern parts. Their seed-time is from the beginning of *August* to the middle of *September*. From the beginning of *November* to the middle of *March*, or thereabout, there is constant frost and snow, which in most places is some yards deep: their summer grain, such as, barley, oats, pease, &c. is sown from the middle of *April*, to the twentieth of *May*: their roots and herbs of all kinds are exceeding good. At *Astracan*, they have the best melons in the world. They have likewise the greatest plenty of honey, all over this country, of which they make a pleasant liquor, which is thought exceeding wholesome, and a good preservative against the gout and stone; distempers almost unknown in *Russia*!

This extensive country being mostly plain, except to the northward of *Archangel*, the rivers are consequently navigable, and well stored

stored with exceeding fine fish, I believe fifty **Book** kinds that are not known elsewhere: they **I.** have four kinds of sturgeon; the best and most esteemed is called beluga, very large, fat, and delicious: they have likewise a fish called sterlet, in shape like a sturgeon, but of a different species and less size, not above a yard long, but more esteemed for its delicacy than the sturgeon. They have another kind of fish called belarabetz, about the size of our largest salmon, its flesh is white and exceedingly esteemed: carp, pike, and perch, are in no great esteem: their crac-fish are very large and fine; many of them near a foot in length. In short, there is nothing bad in the country but the government, which is too despotic: a man is neither sure of his life, nor can he call what he has his own, as all depends on the will and pleasure of the Prince.

Physic, and consequently physicians, were but of late introduced into this country: they made use of nothing formerly but simples and plain diet, for the cure of all their distempers: which they found answered very well, being generally of sound and robust constitutions. Their baths are of great use to them, both cold and hot; which last, they regularly use once a week, commonly on *Saturday*. Their women are always brought to-bed in the bagnios, which they

BOOK they esteem very convenient and safe, as it facilitates the birth, and preserves them from cold.

I. The cold bath they only use for aches and rheumatic pains, for which they esteem it the best cure: they ordinarily jump out of the hot bath into the cold, over head and ears, which the physicians approve of, giving for reason, that it shuts the pores all at once, and preserves them from harm. They live in this country, both men and women, to a great age, many of them above an hundred years; though temperance is by no means the characteristic of the nation.

Origin of
the em-
pire.

This great empire, as all other states and monarchies, arose from very small beginnings, by the bold enterprizes of some private men; being formerly divided into small kingdoms, states and provinces, till the year 848, or thereabout, that a good many of them were united under one body; which happened after this manner.

Three brothers, from amongst the *Wagri-ans*, or *Ingrians*, men of great substance and abilities, viz. *Sinaus*, *Rurick*, and *Trewor*, by the assistance of many substantial citizens of great *Novogrod* and *Pleskow*, undertook the conquest of a great part of the country; wherein they succeeded so well, partly by force, partly by composition, that within the space of ten or twelve years, they brought matters so great a length, that they were

were acknowledged sovereigns over a great Book
part of what is now called *Russia*. How- I.
ever they did not govern together, but divid-
ed their conquests equally: *Sinaus* the eldest
brother got for his share, all the countries
about *Belo*, *Oscra*, or *Whitelake*, towards
the dutchy of *Iwore*: *Rurick* the second,
great *Novogrod*, *Ingria*, and north-east as
far as the white sea: the third brother *Tre-
wor*, the province of *Pleskow* and the ad-
jacent lands.

But this division did not subsist long: *Si-
naus* and *Trewor*, dying soon after without
issue, *Rurick* became sovereign of the whole.
He granted great privileges to the cities of
Pleskow and *Novogrod*, for having assisted
and contributed so effectually to the com-
pleating of his conquests.

Rurick dying full of glory, was succeed-
ed by his son *Igor*, a warlike and successful
Prince, who enlarged his dominions greatly
on all sides: he established his residence at
Pereaslav, which he enlarged and fortified
after the manner of those times. He was
at last unfortunately killed, with a great part
of his army, in an ambuscade: laid for him
by the *Drulians*, (a people dwelling on the
Tanais, where the *Don Cossacks* are now),
in his return from *Kiow*. But his death did
not pass unpunished, for his Queen, *Ogla*,
or *Olha*, a Princess of a masculine spirit, con-
tinued

Is brought
under one
sovereign,
Rurick.

Igor suc-
ceeds him.

Is killed.

Queen *Og-
la* reven-
ges his
death.

BOOK continued the war with so good success, that she

I. had very near routed out that nation: what remained of them submitted to pay her tribute. This was the origin of the *Russian* empire: after its conversion to the Christian faith, it greatly increased in its power and dominion. This Queen *Ogla*, after having settled peace and tranquillity at home, made an alliance with the *Grecian* Emperor, and went to *Constantinople*, where she was baptized by the name of *Helena*. This was the first happy beginning of converting those barbarous nations to the knowledge of JESUS CHRIST, and banishing Heathenism out of *Russia*.

She is converted to the Christian faith,

Though the great zeal of Queen *Ogla* excited many of her subjects to embrace the Christian faith, yet she had not influence enough to persuade her son *Swateslas* (a warlike Prince) to become Christian: nor were the *Russians* generally converted till the year 989, that their Prince *Wolodimir*, after he had defeated his two brothers in battle, married *Anna*, sister to the *Grecian* Emperor, *Basil II*. By the good example of this Prince, and his consort, and other proper means, the whole nation embraced the Christian faith. To forward so glorious an undertaking, the Emperor *Basil* sent from *Constantinople*, several bishops, and others of the clergy,

as is the nation in general, under *Wolodimir*.
A. D. 989.

clergy, who had great privileges, and sufficient benefices granted them. B o o k
I.

The conversion of the *Russians* having happened after the *Greek* and *Latin* churches were divided, and they having received their first principles from the *Greeks*, they to this day use the liturgy, and observe the rites and ceremonies of that church with a great deal of exactness, still retaining an aversion to the Pope's supremacy, though in the articles of faith they agree in most points, except in that concerning the procession of the HOLY GHOST; whom nevertheless, they believe to be in all respects equal to the FATHER and the SON.

This Prince removed his residence from *Pereaslaw*, to a town he built on the river *Clisma*, which he called *Wolodimir*, after his own name. He ordered a feast to be kept yearly, in memory of Queen *Ogla*, and was himself after his death numbered amongst the saints, as having been the apostle of his country. He left ten, some say twelve sons, which he had by several wives, before he became Christian, amongst whom he divided his extensive dominions. They made cruel wars against one another, till *Gerislaus* got the better of all the rest.

This Prince, who took the title of monarch of all *Russia*, left five sons, who by their divisions tore the empire to pieces,


B O O K which continued so for some time, till *Wo-*

I. *lodimir II.* united them all again, and became, as his grandfather had been, Czar, or Emperor of all *Russia*, but more absolute than any of his predecessors. This Prince had war with the *Hungarians*, &c. and became so formidable, that the *Grecian* Emperor courted his alliance, and acknowledged him for Czar.

Ofswolod. This Prince was succeeded by his son *Ofswolod*, who left eight sons. By their divisions, they almost ruined the empire: at last, **Gregoric.** one of them called *Gregorie*, by his bravery and conduct subdued all the rest. He was succeeded by his son *Demetrius*, also a valiant Prince, who, after he had overcome the *Poles* and *Tartars* in several battles, at last unfortunately perished with a great part of his army.

George. To him succeeded his son *George*, an unfortunate Prince: he was at once attacked by the *Tartars*, *Poles*, and knights of *Livonia*; and at last killed by the *Tartars*.

Gereflaus II. *Gereflaus II.* son to *Demetrius*, succeeded his brother *George*. This Prince left five sons. *Alexander*, the eldest, who succeeded him, was a pious, brave, and most successful Prince: he had the better of his enemies on all sides. That he might be at a greater distance from his troublesome neighbours the *Tartars*, he removed his residence from
Wolodimir,

Wolodimir, to the banks of the river *Moscu*, **Book**
where he built the city of *Moscow*, which **I.**
stands on a pleasant, though unfruitful  plain.

builds the
city of
Moscow.
Daniel.

This Prince was succeeded by his son *Daniel*, who built the citadel of *Moscow*. In his reign the *Poles* made themselves masters of *Black Russia*, *Podolia* and *Kiow*; upon which *Daniel* applied to the Pope, offering to submit his dominions to the see of *Rome*, provided his holiness would oblige the *Poles* to restore these countries to him; but that it seems the Pope could not effectuate, so things continued as they were, during the reign of this Prince. He left five sons, *George*, *John*, &c. *George* succeeded his father, but was soon after murdered by his cousin *Demetrius*, grandson to *Gereflaus*. He by the assistance of the *Tartars* had disputed the succession with *George*; but the Cham, on some private quarrel, caused murder him in his turn: on which, the succession devolved on *John*, second brother to *George*. This was an exceeding pious and charitable Prince, during whose reign nothing remarkable happened. He left three sons, *Demetrius*, *John*, and *Simon*. *Demetrius* who succeeded him, in the beginning of his reign had wars with the *Tartars* of *Casan* and *Astracan*, over whom he obtained a notable victory; but next year *Tochat-*
nick

BOOK *mick* the great Cham marched against him

I. at the head of a powerful army, first made himself master of *Wolodimir*, then of *Moscow*; after which he entirely routed *Demetrius*. *Tochatmick* became so insolent upon this success, that he drew upon himself the arms of *Timurlano*, commonly called *Tamerlane*, who gave him a total overthrow, and took possession of his whole country.

Basil. *Basil* the son of *Demetrius*, who had succeeded him, took advantage of this defeat of the *Tartars*, and not only retook the towns they had seized from his father, but possessed himself of a great part of their country on *Tamerlane's* retreat; who after he had routed *Bajazet* and taken him prisoner, was obliged to return to his own country, to quell an insurrection that had happened in his absence.

Basil did not live long to enjoy the fruits of this good success. He had only one son, (also called *Basil*), whom judging unfit to govern so great an empire, he set aside, and appointed his brother *Gregorie* to succeed him. This *Gregorie* during his short reign, had continual wars with the *Poles*, *Tartars*, and knights of *Livonia*. At his death, he declared *Basil* his nephew his successor, though he had two sons of his own.

Basil II. These princes were so ill pleased with their father's destination, that they fell upon
means

means to get *Basil* in their power; and that **Book** he might be still thought unfit to govern, **I.** put out his eyes, and banished him to *Uglitz*; which barbarous treatment the nation in general so much resented, that even those who were in their interest before abandoned them, declared for *Basil*, and brought him back to *Moscow*, where he reigned undisturbed till his death.

This Prince was succeeded by his son *John* John Basil-
Basilwick. *Basilwick I.* commonly called the victorious, on account of the great conquests he obtained. This Czar, by the assistance of the *Grecian* Emperor *Emmanuel*, whose niece he had married, drove the *Poles* and *Tartars* entirely out of *Russia*, and considerably enlarged his dominions: he took from *Alexander* Duke of *Lithuania*, after defeating his army near the *Boristhenes*, the towns of *Drogobush*, *Beil*, and *Breusko*, with the greatest part of the dutchy of *Severia*: he subdued likewise the dukedom of *Tivere*, and took great *Novogrod*; from which, it is said, he carried off a booty of three hundred cart loads of gold, silver, and other valuable things. He built *Ivanogrod*, a castle opposite to *Narva*, on the other side the river of that name in *Ingria*.

To this great Prince succeeded his son *Gabriel*, who changed his name to that of *Basil III.* He took *Smolensko* from the *Poles*, Basil III.

BOOK *Poles*, and added *Pleskow* to his domini-

I. ons; which since the days of *Trewor* had
 ~~~~~ been a free city: yet he was defeated in  
 two great battles, in the one, by the *Poles*,  
 in the other, by the knights of the *Teutonick*  
 order, and those of *Liefland* then united:  
 on which a fifty years peace ensued. He  
 afterwards subdued the northern provinces,  
*Pesara*, *Pagina*, *Samoedia*, and extended his  
 conquests beyond the *White-sea* to the river  
 Conquers the king- *Obi*. This Prince also made the king-  
 dom of *Casan* submit and pay tribute; to  
*Casan*. which place he sent a Viceroy, who treated  
 the people with the utmost rigour and seve-  
 rity. They made complaints to the Czar,

The inha- but meeting with no redress, rather still  
 bitants beg harsher usage, they applied to the Cham of  
 assistance *Tartary*, offering the kingdom to his bro-  
 from the *Tartary*, offering the kingdom to his bro-  
 Cham of ther, if he would come and relieve them  
*Tartary*, from the oppression of the *Russians*.

The Cham did not wait for a second invi-  
 tation, but with all expedition marched to  
 their relief, with an army of an hundred  
 thousand men: he forthwith invested *Casan*,  
 and summoned the Governor to surrender,  
 who being in no condition to hold out, ha-  
 ving enemies both without and within, ac-  
 cepted of the Cham's conditions; which  
 who obli- were, that he, together with all the *Russians*  
 ges the *Russians*  
 to retire, both in the town and country, should be al-  
 lowed



lowed to retire to *Moscow* with their families and effects.

I.

Upon this, the Cham's brother, *Sape-Gerai*, was proclaimed King. This successful enterprize encouraged the Cham to undertake greater matters: he resolved to pay a visit to the Czar at his place of residence, and marched without further deliberation through that vast country, putting all under contribution, without meeting with any resistance, till he came to the river *Occa*, where he rested some few days to refresh his troops.

*Sape-Gerai* now King of *Casan*, after he had put his affairs in order, marched with all the force he could raise to support his brother; he surprised and pillaged *Nisi*, *Novogrod* and *Wolodimir*, and joined the Cham, about the time he had crossed the *Occa*, with an army of fifty thousand men.

The Czar, how soon he had accounts of this sudden and unexpected invasion, caused assemble as many troops as he could possibly collect, and ordered them to march and oppose the enemy, under the command of his General *Demetrius Beilsky*, who came up with the *Tartars* after they had crossed the *Occa*, and attacked the Cham; but it seems with more resolution than conduct, for the *Tartars* obtained a compleat victory; and being all horse, pursued the flying ene-

and at-  
tacks the  
Czar in his  
own domi-  
nions.

The  
Cham's  
brother  
marches to  
his assist-  
ance.

The Czar  
sends an  
army to  
stop their  
progress;

which the  
Cham de-  
feats.

BOOK my to the city of *Moscow*, cutting them

I. down, and taking prisoners in great multitudes. On this the Czar's spirit sunk to that degree, that he could scarce give the necessary directions to his brother-in-law, Prince *Peter*, but retired in all haste to great *Novogrod*, five hundred miles to the north of *Moscow*, accompanied only by a few persons.

The Czar  
retires.

*Moscow*  
capitulates

A shame-  
ful peace  
concluded.

The Cham attacked, and soon became master of this great city, meeting with little or no resistance; but the castle stood two furious attacks, yet, finding themselves in no condition to hold out long, they began to think of treating with the enemy: to pave the way, they sent him presents of their best and most valuable effects, which took so well with the Cham, that he declared himself willing to conclude a peace with the Czar, provided he would oblige himself in all time coming to be his vassal, and to pay him a certain sum of money yearly by way of tribute. The Cham caused erect his statue in the great market-place of the city; that every year, when he sent to receive the tribute, the Czar might in token of his submission, in presence of the *Tartarian* envoy, fall down before it, and publicly acknowledge his vassalage. All which being agreed to on the Czar's part, and confirmed by a writ under his hand and seal, the

the Cham left *Moscow*, and directed his march homeward, carrying away a vast treasure and booty. BOOK I.

In his march homeward he fell short of provisions, and on his approach to a strong town called *Resan*, three hundred miles to the south of *Moscow*, sent orders to the Governor to open the gates that he might march his troops through the town, and be furnished with what provisions and necessities he wanted: the only answer the Governor gave to his summons was to fire upon the *Tartars*. The Cham sent the Governor a second summons, desiring him to take care what he did, and acquainting him that the Czar, his master, was now become his vassal; of which if he doubted, he could make it appear by a writ under the Czar's own hand and seal. The Governor pretended to be absolutely ignorant of this, and humbly desired that the Cham would be pleased to let him see the Czar's writ to that effect; offering immediately to submit if it was in the terms represented. The Cham, without in the least suspecting his design, sent him the writing; of which he was no sooner possessed, than he caused fire upon the *Tartars* from all quarters, and forced them to retire with great loss.

The Cham too late perceived his mistake; but, it being then about the end of *October*,

BOOK he did not think it prudent, at that season of  
 I. the year, to attack the town in form, but  
 ~~~~~ marched off in great fury, vowing to return  
 in the spring and be revenged of the Czar
 and his cunning Governor. This officer's
 name was *John Kowar*, whom the Czar
 deservedly rewarded for this great service.

This inglorious writ being recovered as
 above, the Czar caused declare war against
 the *Tartars*, and the ensuing year marched
 at the head of a great army, with a design
 to reduce *Casan*; but having undertaken the
 siege too late in the year, he met with no
 success: the *Tartars* harrassing his army con-
 tinually, he was obliged to raise the siege
 and return to *Moscow*. During this cam-
 paign he built a fort on the river *Sur*, which
 he called *Basiligorod*. The ensuing year
 he sent a great army against *Casan*, which
 was equally unsuccessful. These disap-
 pointments bore so hard upon him that he
 sickened and died of grief.

It is to be taken notice of, that in the
 reign of this Prince, *Maximilian I.* the *Ro-*
man Emperor sent a splendid embassy, made
 an alliance with him, and in his letter still
 extant in the archives of *Moscow*, gave him
 the title of Emperor.

John Basi- His son *John Basiliwick II.* succeeded
 liwick II. him. This Czar is commonly called by the
Russians, *John the tyrant*. His first enter-
 prize

prize was against *Casan*, which he besieged B o o k
 with a mighty army: he summoned the I.
 town to surrender, offering pardon to the ~
 inhabitants, and liberty to the *Tartars* to
 return from whence they came; but the
 Governor *Missa Chamais* undervaluing his
 terms, declared that he would defend the
 place to the last, not doubting but the *Cham*
 would soon appear at the head of a nu-
 merous army to support him; from whom
 the *Russians* might expect as good entertain-
 ment as they had met with some years be-
 fore.

Czar *John*, picqued at this saucy answer
 of the Governor, carried on the siege vigor-
 ously; but there happening a mutiny in his
 army, which he could not pacify, he was
 obliged to postpone his resentment and
 raise the siege. He marched his army back
 to *Moscow*, where the mutineers were pu-
 nished in the severest manner; which severe-
 rity had the desired effect. He now began
 to introduce into his army the discipline of
 foreign troops, and to model them after the
 manner of other countries in *Europe*; for
 which end he got into his service many fo-
 reign officers, engineers, &c. to whom he
 gave great encouragement.

Next spring he marched his army, and besieges
 attacked *Casan* before the *Tartars* thought and takes
 he could have taken the field. In this ex- Casan,
pedition

BOOK expedition he was more successful, for after
 I. having made sufficient breaches, he carried
 ~~~~~ the place on the first attack, and put most  
 of the *Tartars* to the sword.

Elevated with this good success, he next formed a design of attacking *Astracan* the capital of that kingdom: his reason for reducing this place, was their having succoured *Casan* in his father's time, and also last year when he attacked it himself. Having formed this design, and settled a Governor with a sufficient garrison in *Casan*, he marched with a numerous army down the banks of the river *Volga* till he came before *Astracan*: having made a short speech as also A- to his troops, which was well relished, he stracan. led them on and carried the place immediately, the town being large and ill fortified. He put all who were found in arms to the sword, and allowed his soldiers to plunder it.

After these conquests, Czar *John* thought nothing too hard for him; and having left a sufficient body of troops under the command of Prince *Cerebrino*, he marched for *Moscow*, where he was received with the acclamations of the people. Ever since that time the kingdoms of *Casan* and *Astracan* have been subject to the *Russian* empire.

Czar

Czar *John's* next expedition was against *Sweden*: he marched into *Carelia* with a great army, and laid siege to *Wiburgh*; but *Gustavus* King of *Sweden*, as soon as he heard of this irruption marched with a body of good troops to attack the enemy. The *Russians* did not wait their arrival, but raised the siege, and marched back to their own country. *Gustavus* pursued them the length of *Kexholm* and *Notteburgh*, where he waited a while, expecting to be joined by some troops from *Poland* and *Livonia* his allies; but these not appearing he made peace with the *Russians*, and then returned to *Stockholm*, leaving his allies exposed to all the miseries of the war that soon followed.

Czar *John* after this sent his army to besiege *Narva*, under pretence that the *Livonians* had not paid their wonted tribute, and because that garrison had fired on *Ivono-grod*, and killed some of the *Russians* in time of peace. *Narva*, which was not then so well fortified as it is now, did not hold out full eight days: the castle surrendered a few days after upon terms. After this the *Russians* besieged and took *Nyen*, *Huyson* and *Dorpt*; all which places they rendered desolate by their cruelties: the old people, and all under twelve years of age, were barbarously murdered, and those who were vigorous,

BOOK vigorous, both men and women, were sold

I. for slaves to the *Tartars*. These barbari-

ties however, could not well be imputed to the Czar, he not being at the head of his army himself, having intrusted Prince *Sigally* a *Tartar* with the command. Then the *Russians* besieged and took *Selin*, where the great master of the *Teutonic* order, *William of Furstenburgh*, was made prisoner, and afterwards carried in triumph to *Moscow*. The succeeding great master, *Baron Keller*, who had been coadjutor to the former, seeing it was impracticable for him to make head against the *Russians*, resolved to take care of one. He gave off all *Livonia* to the *Poles*, on condition that he should have for him and his heirs male for ever, the dutchies of *Courland* and *Sevical* under the protection of *Poland*. Thus ended that

The extinction of the *Teutonic* order in *Livonia*,

famous order of the *Teutonic* knights in *Livonia*, which had subsisted upwards of three hundred years. *Reval* fearing the fate of *Narva*, and the other towns which the *Russians* had so barbarously treated, delivered itself up to *Sweden*, on advantageous conditions.

Czar *John* takes *Poloczk*.

Czar *John's* next expedition was against *Poloczk*, on pretence that it had formerly belonged to great *Novogrod*: this place he besieged with a numerous army, and soon became master of it, notwithstanding its being



being a place of considerable strength and Book provided with all necessaries for a long de- I.  
fence. The *Polish* dyet was at this time assembled at *Petercow*, whence they sent an Ambassador to the Czar, acquainting him that they were met to choose a successor to that crown, and that probably they would either choose him or one of his sons. This message so far disarmed Czar *John*, that after leaving a sufficient garrison in *Polocz* he returned back to his own country: but instead of being elected successor to the *Polish* crown, he discovered that King *Sigismund Augustus* had found means to form a dangerous conspiracy against him in his own country, wherein not only most of the grandees and principal towns, but his only brother *George* was engaged: their scheme was to cut off the Czar, and put the empire under the protection of *Poland*.

A conspiracy formed against him;

Czar *John* had now a proper subject for his resentment. All those who were discovered to have been engaged in this conspiracy, his only brother and his whole family not excepted, were put to death in the most cruel manner that could be invented. When all these horrid executions were over, Czar *John* pursued his designs against *Poland*, but not with that success he expected; for his army was routed by *Nicholas Rad-*

which he cruelly punishes.

BOOK I. *zevil* near *Wittepsk*, his General *Swersky*, and most of his principal commanders taken prisoners. But though he was unsuccessful on this quarter, his army commanded by *Cerebrinoff* near *Astracan*, obtained a notable victory over the *Turks* commanded by Sultan *Selim* in person.

*Sigismund* King of *Poland* having intelligence that Czar *John*, after this signal defeat of the *Turks*, designed to attack *Poland*, and to march in person at the head of all the forces he could raise, excited the *Tartars* to make an irruption into *Russia*, assuring them that the Czar would not have troops upon that quarter to oppose them, as all his strength was to be employed against him and *Livonia*. The *Tartars* fond of such an opportunity, marched into *Russia* with all their strength, crossed the *Occa*, and from thence went straight to the city of *Moscow*; which they not only pillaged, but burnt two thirds of it to ashes: after which they retired, loaded with booty. At this time Czar *John* was employed in the siege of *Wittingstin*; which place he took, and treated the inhabitants with the greatest barbarity imaginable: he caused the Governor to be spitted and roasted alive, and used all the *Swedes* and *Livonians* very barbarously. *Newhoft* and *Kokenhausen* met with the like fate: after which the Czar returned

*Moscow*  
pillaged  
and burnt  
by the  
*Tartars*.

*John's*  
cruelties  
to the  
*Swedes*.

to

to *Novograd* to celebrate the nuptials of Duke *Magnus*, brother to the King of *Denmark*, with a Princess of *Russia*. B O O K I.

About this time *Sigismund* King of *Poland* died, and was succeeded by the Duke d' *Anjou* brother to the King of *France*, who a few months after left *Poland* incognito, to succeed his brother *Charles IX.* by the name of *Henry III.* on which the *Poles* elected *Stephen Batory* Prince of *Transylvania*, a valiant, generous, fortunate and deserving person to succeed him. His first care was to put the army in good order; and before he would attack *Russia*, he thought it prudent to send an Ambassador to the Czar, requiring him forthwith to restore the towns which he had unjustly taken in *Poland* and *Livonia*; which if he did, he offered him both his friendship and alliance, but if he did not, threatened that he would come and attack him in the heart of his country, and take from him by force what he now had in his power to restore without bloodshed. The King of Poland sends him an Ambassador.

Czar *John* desired the Ambassador to tell his King, that he who had so often triumphed over the *Turks*, *Tartars*, *Poles*, *Livonians* and *Swedes*, was not so very susceptible of fear, as to part with countries which had cost him, so much blood and treasure, on such bravadoes; and that he should soon

BOOK make him sensible whom he had to do with,

I. He then dismissed the Ambassador, and  
 ~~~~~ caused conduct him safe to the frontiers.

King *Stephen* obtained from the dyet all he wanted to enable him to carry on the war with vigour. A great many foreigners came from all countries to learn the art of war under so great a Captain. He soon after marched with a numerous army and a good train of artillery, and laid siege to *Poloczka*, which he took after a stout resistance. Several small places in the neighbourhood he also subdued. He then besieged and took *Socol*, and made *Sheremetoff*, with all the garrison, prisoners of war.

King *Stephen* successful against *John*.

Czar *John* all this while lay with his army near *Pleskow*, judging it next to impossible for the *Poles* to make themselves masters of *Poloczka*; but when he understood that both it and *Socol* were in the power of his enemy, he began to lose all hopes of the war, especially, when he found that King *Stephen* had, with the consent of the republic, made peace and alliance with *Sweden*: this made him attempt to make a peace, but without success, for King *Stephen* would abate nothing of the proposals made by his Ambassador.

His *Polish* majesty, after the taking of *Socol*, was obliged to attend the dyet at *Warsaw*, where the senators resolved to continue

continue the war against *Russia* with the **Book** utmost vigour. This King, during the **I.** whole course of his reign, was so very lucky, that he never was refused any thing he proposed in the dyets; which can be said of few kings of *Poland* before or since, at least since the extinction of the *Jagilan* family.

Czar *John* left *Pleskow* and went to *Novogrod*, where he endeavoured as much as possible to disguise his losses; and finding that the dyet of *Poland* had gone into all their King's measures, he sent an Ambassador with proposals for a cessation of arms. King *Stephen* received the Ambassador, but at the same time continued his march to *Welki-Laki*, a town in *Russia*, which he besieged and took; as also, *Newel*, *Zavalok*, &c. He designed also to have attacked *Pleskow*, but the season of the year being too far advanced, he deferred that siege to the beginning of next campaign, and returned home to assemble the dyet, that he might be furnished with all necessaries for the ensuing year.

*Stephen's
farther
successes.*

Czar *John* from *Novogrod* went to *Moscow*, where he appeared very gay, diverting himself at marriages and other public assemblies. About this time he married his seventh Empress. Having understood by his spies that King *Stephen* had obtained all he wanted

BOOK wanted of the dyet, and that he was deter-

I. mined to attack *Pleskow*; also knowing
 ~~~~~ that his troops were insufficient to oppose  
 the victorious arms of that Prince, he fell  
 upon an expedient, by which he hoped he  
 would be able to procure peace. This was  
 by sending an Ambassador to the Pope, of-  
 fering to acknowledge his supremacy, and  
 subject his empire to the see of *Rome*, if he  
 would make up matters betwixt him and  
*Poland*. The Pope liked this proposal so  
 well, that he sent the reverend father *Possavin*, a jesuit, with instructions and full  
 powers to negotiate that affair.

John  
 makes  
 a  
 proposal to  
 the Pope.

During these two successful campaigns, in which King *Stephen* had gained so much glory, the *Swedes* had not been idle; they took *Narva* by assault, and put seven thousand *Russians* to the sword: they also took *Jamgorod* and *Caporio*. *Ivanogrod* surrendered upon terms, as did *Wissemburgh*, &c.

King *Stephen* opened his third campaign with the siege of *Pleskow*, which he invested as far as his troops would go, it being an exceeding large town, which would have required a very great army to besiege it in form.

A Nuncio  
 arrives in  
 the Polish  
 camp.

In the mean time, the reverend Father *Possavin*, with other ambassadors, arrives in the camp with proposals of peace; but the King would hearken to no terms, unless Czar *John* gave up to the crown of *Poland* all  
 the

the towns he possessed in *Livonia*. At the Book  
same time the siege of *Pleskow* was carried I.  
on vigorously; and Czar *John* using no  
means to relieve it, many of the *Russian*  
grandees went to him in a body, and falling  
prostrate before him, told him, that the  
whole nation was surpris'd at his inactivity;  
that they feared the enemy, if vigorous  
measures were not pursued, would take all  
his towns one after another; begging him  
but to command, and he should soon see an  
army, not only able to drive the enemy  
from the *Russian* frontiers, but to make the  
conquest of all *Poland* if he had a mind to  
it; and, if he did not incline to meet the  
army in person, they begged he would put  
his son at the head of it. Czar *John* heard  
them patiently, till they mentioned his son,  
but then fell in a terrible passion, suspecting  
some other conspiracy, in which he thought  
his son might be concerned: he threatned  
them all with death and destruction, and his  
son coming into his presence to vindicate  
himself, in the height of his passion he gave *John kills*  
him a stroke on the head with his cane, of *his son.*  
which he died a few days after. This Prince  
was called *John* after his father, had never  
disobliged him, and was much beloved by  
him. The Czar seeing his son in this de- His exces-  
plorable state, fell from the greatest fit of sive grief  
anger into an excess of grief and despair, on that ac-  
count.  
refusing

BOOK refusing to take either food or rest, by

I. which his own life came to be in great danger. His friends at last prevailed upon him to take some refreshment; but he could never think of his son without shedding a flood of tears.

A peace  
concluded  
at *Zapolica*.

During this melancholy scene, the ambassadors, with the jesuit *Possavin* in quality of mediator, had met together at *Zapolica*, where peace was concluded betwixt *Poland* and *Russia* on King *Stephen's* own terms; the Czar having renounced all right to *Livonia* in favours of the crown of *Poland*, and the *Poles* having restored the towns they had taken from *Russia*, all prisoners on both sides were set at liberty.

*Possavin*  
puts the  
Czar in  
mind of  
his promise  
to the  
Pope;  
which he  
evades.

Peace being thus established by the mediation of the jesuit *Possavin*, he put the Czar in mind of his promise, of submitting his empire to the jurisdiction of the see of *Rome*. The Czar told him, that it would be a work of time, which, however he would soon put his hand to, promising from time to time to acquaint the Pope with what progress he made in it. With these fair promises *Possavin* was honourably dismissed, and conducted to the frontiers of *Poland*.

The Czar  
grows melancholy,  
and dies in  
1584.

Czar *John*, soon after the death of his son, was seized with a deep melancholy, and died in 1584, about two years after the peace of *Zapolica*. This Prince, if he had been less cruel,



cruel, was certainly a great man: he had a Book  
 very graceful person, a robust constitution, I.  
 a penetrating wit, and sound judgment; but all these qualities were stained by his  
 barbarous and inhuman disposition. Be- <sup>His character.</sup>  
 sides the fore-mentioned conquests, the king-  
 dom of *Siberia* fell into his hands, by the  
 means of one *Jeremy Timosteon* an arch-robber, who with a band such as himself, <sup>How Si-</sup>  
 assisted by one *Straganoff*, a powerful and <sup>beria be-</sup>  
 rich man, surprised and carried *Tobolska* the <sup>came sub-</sup>  
 capital of *Siberia*, took the young King pri- <sup>ject to</sup>  
 soner (aged about twelve years) and sent <sup>Russia.</sup>  
 him to *Moscow*, where he was well received  
 by Czar *John*, who caused educate him in  
 the principles of the Christian religion, and  
 gave him a considerable estate in exchange  
 for his kingdom; which he settled on him  
 and his heirs for ever. This family still  
 subsists in *Russia*, and is represented by a  
 person who has the title of *Sibersky-Zare-*  
*wich*, or Prince of *Siberia*.

Czar *John's* first Empress was a daughter <sup>Czar</sup>  
 of the family of *Romanous*, by whom he <sup>*John's*</sup>  
 had two sons, the eldest of which he killed <sup>marriages</sup>  
 as above narrated, when about sixteen <sup>and issue.</sup>  
 years of age. *Theodora* II. lived to suc-  
 ceed him. This Empress he shut up in a <sup>A shock-</sup>  
 cloister, and married no fewer than seven <sup>ing in-</sup>  
 wives, turning them off at pleasure: the <sup>stance of</sup>  
 third he caused his guards throw into a lake <sup>his barba-</sup>  
 rity.

BOOK near *Moscow*. This lake is called *Negline*,

I. and to preserve to futurity the memory of so barbarous an action, its water hath never since been made use of. By his seventh Empress he had a son called *Demetrius*, who 'tis believed was murdered at nine years of age, by *Boris Gadinow* at *Uglitz*, whether he had sent away the young Prince and his mother. The barbarity of this Prince to his wives can by no means be vindicated; but, for his other acts which are called cruel, perhaps some of them were in some measure necessary\*. The *Russians* however, still think of him with horror, yet it is allowed that he had some good qualities:

His good qualities. he was a great encourager of brave and resolute men, a frequenter of the church, and a strict observer of the rites and ceremonies of religion: he built above forty churches, and sixty cloisters for persons of both sexes, allowing them sufficient rents for their support, especially in the city of *Moscow*. But though he thought it prudent to apply for the Pope's good offices, to compose the differences between him and the King of *Poland*; yet, he certainly had no intention of submitting his empire to the see of *Rome*: for, several years before that, the  
Pope

\* As this Prince seems to have been naturally of a cruel disposition, we are afraid the plea of necessity will stand him in little stead with most readers.

Pope had sent him a nuncio, offering him the title of King, on condition of such submission; but he desired the nuncio to tell the Pope, that his title was *John Emperor of Russia*, and King of many kingdoms, handed down to him from GOD by his valiant progenitors; and that he did not understand how any mortal could assume the right of disposing of titles, far less of kingdoms; that for his part he desired none, but what he was able to conquer and support by his victorious arms.

Book I.

The Pope offers him the title of King, which he despises.

He taxed the clergy highly, obliging them to bring most of their rents into his treasury, giving them only a short allowance for food and raiment: he fortified and built above an hundred towns and castles on the frontiers, in places never inhabited before: he laid heavy taxes on his subjects in general, and notwithstanding the expence of so much building, heaped up vast treasure. This Prince was contemporary with Queen *Elizabeth of England*; and was so much taken with her character, that he proposed marriage to her (as he supposed), by the means of one *Bomelius*, an *English* physician, who undertook to get his letters safely conveyed into the Queen's hands, and to establish a private correspondence between them, for which the Czar made him considerable presents; but at last, discovering the cheat,

His behaviour to the clergy.

Was contemporary with Q. Elizabeth, with whose character he falls in love.

BOOK *Bomelius* was put to the torture, and on  
 I. confession put to death. The bishop of  
 ~~~~~ *Novogrod*, who was concerned with him in  
 carrying on this trick, out of regard to his
 character, was not put to death, but con-
 demned to live on bread and water during
 life.

He nails the *French* Ambassador's hat to his head, for wearing it in his presence. It is reported that this Czar caused nail a *French* Ambassador's hat to his head for wearing it in his presence; which barbarous treatment, however, did not intimidate Queen *Elizabeth's* Ambassador, who appearing covered in his presence, the Czar caused ask him, Whether he had heard how he had treated the *Frenchman* for failing in his respect after that manner? The Ambassador replied, that if he had, he would not have regarded it, as he thought a thousand such lives as his, were not to be put in balance with the dignity of the crown he had the honour to represent; besides, he knew very well that his great mistress the Queen of *England*, would thoroughly resent any injury done her in the person of her Ambassador, though by the greatest and most powerful monarch upon earth. Upon this, the Czar looking sternly about amongst his nobles, observe, says he, how this man stands up for the honour of a woman: Is there any one of you who durst undertake so much for me? This story may be true or false,

Questions the *Eng-lish* Ambassador on the same subject; his bold answer,

which is well taken by the Czar.

false, being one of that kind which is applied to more than one Prince, and claimed by more quarters of the world than one. Much more is said of this Prince, and several other bad things laid to his charge: but, I proceed to the history of his son *Theodore*, who succeeded him.

Prince *Theodore* had been married, during his father's lifetime, to a sister of *Boras Gadenow's*, who of course became his prime minister: a man full of cunning and subtlety, and who did very popular things: he discharged many of the taxes, and managed matters with such dexterity, affability and mildness, that he became the favourite of all ranks. By these measures he played his game so artfully, that in a very short time he paved the way for himself to the throne. *Demetrius*, third son to the late Czar, together with his mother, he sent to a town of his own called *Uglitz*, and (as already observed) caused murder the young Prince: the mother he shut up in a cloister. As the murderers were coming to receive their reward, he caused way-lay and murder them.

Czar *Theodore*, who was a Prince of little capacity, though of a vigorous constitution, died suddenly without issue in the year 1597, no body knowing, nor daring to enquire how, though all believed he was poisoned by *Boras Gadenow*: for what is not

A weak Prince; dies without issue in 1597. Supposed to have been poi-

BOOK an ambitious man capable of, especially,

I. when endued with talents proper for carrying on such a wicked project? having, beset by Boras Gadenow, sides, been several years master of the finances; having had the disposal of all posts and preferments both civil and military, even to appointing the domestic servants that attended the Emperor's person, which last were all his creatures: yet to blind the eyes of the people, this man on Czar *Theodore's* death, though he was sure of being raised to the throne, gave out that he designed to retire from the world and turn monk.

who pretends an inclination to enter into a convent, which to carry on his design, he actually does. He actually retired into a convent to pass his noviciate, though at the same time he had his emissaries going about amongst the boyars and great men, commending him for his great worth and abilities, no doubt, with a view to obtain what he pretended to fly from.

The great men wait upon him, and offer him the crown, The great men, upon hearing of his retreat, went to him in a body, and made him an offer of the crown. Among other arguments they made use of to induce him to accept of it, one was, that they knew no person that so well deserved it: though this was the very point he aimed at, and what of all things upon earth he had most at heart, he seemed to make some difficulty in accepting the offer; however at last he yielded

ed to their desire, and was proclaimed Em- B o o k
 peror, in appearance to the universal satisf- I.
 faction of the people. As he had managed ~~~~~
 affairs well during Czar *Theodore's* short Is pro-
 reign, he continued to pursue the same claimed
 measures after he was raised to the throne. Emperor,
 He got *Ingria* restored, made peace with the and go-
Swedes and all his neighbours, and lived verns well,
 undisturbed in this agreeable state, until the
 year 1602, when a rumour went that the
 supposed murdered Prince, *Demetrius*, was
 alive; and though *Boras Gadenow* had
 himself ordered the murder of this young
 Prince, and really believed he was dead,
 some are still of opinion that he was con-
 veyed out of the way, and the son of a
 priest murdered in his stead: yet when it
 was universally talked of that *Demetrius* was
 still in being, and making preparations for
 recovering his right, it gave *Boras* a vast
 deal of uneasiness.

This *Demetrius*, whose true name was The first
Griska Utropeca, was said to be a gentle- *Demetri-*
 man's son in *Jaroslav*: being a roguish boy, us.
 he run away from his parents, and after
 wandering about for some time, at last went
 into a convent: having one day overheard
 some of the monks say that he looked very
 like *Demetrius*, Czar *John Basiliwick's*
 youngest son, who had been murdered at
Uglitz, he took the hint, and by the ad-
 vice

BOOK vice of one of the monks whom he made

I. acquainted with his design, and who was to give him all the assistance in his power, he retired into *Poland*, where he was to wait till he found a proper opportunity to declare himself. Having reached *Lithuania*, he got himself introduced to Prince *Adam Wusnowitsky's* company, and being a well-looking young man, the Prince took a liking to him, and engaged him into his service (the great men in *Poland* having always numbers of such about their persons), where he carried himself so well, that the whole family, especially the Prince and Princess, were charmed with him; till one day falling into some irregularity, the Prince was so much offended with him, that he gave him a box on the ear, calling him at the same time *bledinsin, i. e. son of a w---e*: on this he fell a weeping bitterly, saying to the Prince, If you knew who I really am you would not have used me after this manner. This excited the Prince's curiosity, and the subtle *Griska* at last told him: That he was *Demetrius*, Czar *John Basilwick's* only surviving son; whom (added he) *Boras Gadenow* thought indeed he had destroyed, but that in his stead he had only murdered the son of a priest; that by the assistance of good people he was brought into that country, and into his family, where he designed

to

His account of himself.

to have continued, until God in his good Book time should think fit to restore him to his I. just right. To confirm this story, he unbuttoned his breast, shewing a golden cross set with diamonds of considerable value, and at the same time falling on his knees before the Prince, begged his protection. The good-natured Prince easily believing him, caused forthwith clothe him sumptuously, and pay him all the honours and respect due to the Czar.

As an affair of this kind could not be long concealed, it immediately took air, and in a trice spread over the whole *Russian* His story empire. Persons of all ranks were over-gains credit in *Russia*. joyed at the discovery, giving thanks and praising God for his wonderful preservation of *Demetrius*: and, the more industrious that *Boras Gadenow* was in using *Boras en- deavours* means to have *Griska* delivered up to him, to have him delivered up. or otherwise destroyed, the more the nation was confirmed in the belief of his being genuine.

Prince *Wusnowistky* conducted *Griska*, He is treated with great respect in *Poland*, whom we shall henceforth call *Demetrius*, into *Poland*, where he was received by all the grandees with great respect, particularly, by the Woywode of *Sandomir*, who with other leading men pitched upon by King *Sigismund*, forthwith raised an army and marched with him into *Russia*, he having

BOOK first bound and obliged himself to continue

I. for ever a friend to *Poland*, and to give not
 only a toleration for the free exercise of
 the Roman catholick religion, but also in
 due time to establish it over the whole em-
 pire.

He march-
 es into
Russia.

Boras's
 dismal
 state.

In the mean time, he fell desperately in
 love with the Lady *Maria Anne*, the Way-
 wode of *Sandomir's* daughter, a very beau-
 tiful young lady, and desired her in mar-
 riage; perhaps with a view to engage her
 father and the nation to stand more firmly
 by him. His proposal being agreed to, he
 marched into *Russia* at the head of thirty
 thousand *Poles*, having previous thereto
 published a manifesto, inviting all his faith-
 ful subjects to join him, threatening at the
 same time with utter destruction, all those
 who should continue to adhere to the usur-
 per. As he entered *Russia*, numbers of
 people joined him: the *Cossacks* to a man
 declared for him, and most of the towns
 threw open their gates to receive him: his
 army increased daily, which struck such a
 terror on *Boras*, that he fell into the most
 abject condition imaginable, afraid of every
 body, and not knowing whom to trust;
 no doubt through the remembrance of his
 crimes, especially of the murders he had
 committed in raising himself to the throne.
 In short, he became a burden to himself:
 nevertheless,

nevertheless, he neglected nothing that he **Book**
 ought to have done on that occasion. He **I.**
 got the patriarch to excommunicate all those
 who had joined the impostor, as he called
 him, and sent an army against him under
 the command of his kinsman *John Gade-*
now, whom he thought he could trust pre-
 ferably to all others. This army came up
 with *Demetrius*, and set upon him with
 such resolution, that he was forced to re-
 treat to *Puteivil* with considerable loss; *Boras at*
 which so encouraged *Boras's* party, that *first suc-*
 they resolved to pursue the enemy close, *cessful,*
 and not allow them time to recover: but
Demetrius did not lose courage, and, being
 joined by a fresh body of *Poles, Tartars*
 and *Cossacks*, he attacked *Boras* his army at *then total-*
Reilsk, and overthrew it totally. As the *ly over-*
Poles and *Cossacks* were cutting down the *thrown,*
Russians unmercifully in the pursuit, he
 called out to spare his subjects, and caused
 sound a retreat. When *Boras* got the ac-
 counts of this defeat, he fell a bleeding at
 mouth and nose so excessively, that it threw
 him into convulsions, of which he expired *His death.*
 a few days after, in the year 1605.

On the death of *Boras* the whole nation *Demetri-*
 declared for *Demetrius*, except the capital, *us general-*
 where most of the great men of *Boras's* *ly acknow-*
 party caused proclaim his son *Theodore Bo-*
risowich Czar. But a few days after, *ledged,*

BOOK *metrius* rooted the remains of *Boras's* army,


I. and took prisoner (amongst others) *John Gadenow*, who would not submit and acknowledge him for Czar; for which he was thrown into prison. This victory was chiefly owing to *Peter Busmanoff*, one of *Boras's* Generals, who, either out of picque, or that he really believed *Demetrius* to be the person he gave himself out for, as the armies were on the point of engaging, called out on the head of his command, that *Demetrius* was the true heir of the empire; and desired, that all who loved the interest of their country might follow him: upon which, not only his own command, but some thousands more of the *Russians* went over to *Demetrius*, who received them so graciously (especially *Busmanoff*) that they never after abandoned him. When the accounts of this victory reached *Moscow*, they who had so lately proclaimed *Theodore Borisowich*, went to the palace and murdered both him and his mother: his sister's life *Theodore* and his mother are murdered. 'tis said, was spared by *Demetrius's* order.

On this victory, *Demetrius* marched straight to the capital; where, he was received with the acclamations and huzzas of the people. The sixteenth of *June* 1605 he was proclaimed, and crowned Emperor the twenty-first of *July*. The first thing he did thereafter, was to take his supposed mother

mother out of the cloister, where she had Book
 been shut up by *Boras Gadenow*; and that I.
 she might be brought to court with the more honour and respect, he went himself
 some miles out of town to meet her, accompanied by all his princes and boyars. They embraced each other with great appearance of tenderness and affection; and out of respect, he refused to sit in the same coach with her, but mounted his horse, and attended her to the imperial apartments in the palace, where she was entertained with a state and grandeur suitable to her high rank. This good lady, though she knew well how matters stood, yet being heartily wearied of the monastick life, and no doubt well enough pleased with the hopes of being revenged on the *Gadenowian* family, connived at the cheat: perhaps too, her ambition was agreeably flattered, with the view of living in greater state for the future, and of being considered as the Emperor's mother.

Notwithstanding all these contrivances, it *Demetrius*
 was soon whispered about that he was an impostor, and not *Demetrius*. However, ^{as hath enemies in the government,}
 this soon blew over, and he might have supported himself, had he not gone into several impolitick measures; such as, emptying the treasury to gratify the *Poles*; marrying a *Polish* lady, and bringing her into
Russia

BOOK *Russia* with so much state and so great ex-

L  pence, and cloathed after the *Polish* fashion ; eating of veal, which the *Russians* had then in abhorrence ; going into the church with too little ceremony, followed by a number of dogs ; and not bowing down low enough to the crucifix and pictures of the saints. But what really disgusted the nation most of all, was his neglecting the great men of the country, and bestowing all posts and preferments on the *Poles*. These unpopular measures stirred up a great faction against him ; which, by *Busmanoff's* means, he came to be informed of : whereupon Prince *Zusky* was apprehended, and condemned to lose his head, as being the chief promoter of the design ; but by the intercession of *Demetrius's* supposed mother, he was not only pardoned but received into favour ; which lenity *Demetrius* soon after heartily repented of. *Zusky* represented to him, that the most effectual means to gain the love of his subjects, was to remove the *Polish* guards from the palace, and trust the care of his person to the *Russians* ; which advice he went into contrary to the opinion of *Busmanoff* and his other friends. *Zusky* then thought he had his game secured, only one thing more was wanting, which was to persuade the patriarch into their measures : this they endeavoured to do, by laying before

Removes
his *Polish*
guards.

forè him the danger that the church was in Book
 since *Demetrius* had engaged to introduce I.
 the service of the church of *Rome*, and ac-
 knowledge the Pope's supremacy, which of
 consequence must abolish the patriarchate,
 and overturn the established religion. This
 is a common pretext in most revolutions, and
 took so well on this occasion, that *Zusky*
 thought there was no time to be lost, so to
 work he went; and causing march privily
 numbers of people into the city on pretence
 of witnessing the marriage solemnity, a con-
 siderable body of those being privately as-
 sembled, and having disposed every thing to
 his mind, he marched at the head of them
 early in the morning, and invested the pa-
 lace; the guards being in the plot, made no
 opposition: they broke in, and cut to pieces
 several of the attendants, (*Busmanoff* among
 the first) and at last seized on *Demetrius*
 himself, who had jumped from a window
 and was almost bruised to death. Then in
 some measure to satisfy the people, be-
 fore they would make an end of him,
 one of the party asked him, Whether
 he was really *Demetrius* or *Griska*? To
 which he answered, that he was *Demetrius*,
 owned and crowned as such in the face of
 the world; and if, said he, you have any
 further doubt, go and ask the Empress my
 mother, to whom I refer you. They all
 seeming

BOOK seeming surpris'd at this positive affirmation,

I. desired Prince *Zusky* to wait on the Empress
 ~~~~~ for that effect, who on his return affirmed,  
 that the Empress now as positively disowned  
 him as she had owned him before, declar-  
 ing, that he was not her son, and, that she  
 never had any but the unhappy child who  
 was murdered at *Uglitz*, yet, that she was  
 not without some good-will to this man,  
 for having revenged her on the bloody usur-  
 per *Boras*. Upon this, one of the party  
 by *Zusky's* command, came up with a pistol  
 and shot *Demetrius* dead, (the 17th of *May*  
 1606.) saying, Thou infamous traitor, take  
 this as the reward of thy imposture: after  
 which, they carried his corpse all mangled  
 and disfigured with wounds, to the publick  
 place before the palace, where he lay some  
 days expos'd to the view of every body.

His fatal  
end.

The world is not yet satisfied whether  
 this *Demetrius* was true or false; but there  
 are two things which seem to declare in his  
 favour: the first is, that he had one arm  
 considerably shorter than the other, and a  
 large wrat or mole on his face; which  
 marks were really known to have been in  
 the true *Demetrius*: besides, he was much  
 about the same age, and had a great resem-  
 blance of him otherwise: the second is,  
 that whereas all usurpers and impostors,  
 even in their best and securest situations are  
 not



not without jealousies and fears, yet he appeared to have had none, as it is evident from his dismissing the *Polish* guards from about his person, contrary to the opinion of his best friends. He put such an entire trust in his own subjects, that the night before his cruel death, he caused advertise the *Poles* to take care of themselves, but could never be persuaded that his own people had any bad design against himself. From these two points, a strong presumption arises that he was the true *Demetrius*.

About fifteen hundred of his adherents were at the same time massacred; which happened on the ninth day after the arrival of his Empress.

Prince *Basil Iwonowich Zusky*, who had contrived and carried on this treacherous and bloody affair, was immediately and un-animously proclaimed Czar, but was no sooner raised to the throne, than one appeared pretending to be *Demetrius*. His friends gave out that he had escaped among the throng and repaired to *Calluga*; to which place vast numbers of the *Cossacks*, *Russians* and *Tartars* had repaired: he had several engagements with *Zusky's* troops, in which he always had the better. In order to get rid of such a formidable rival, *Zusky* at last sent the Woywade of *Sandamir*, together with his daughter *Maria Anne*, to

The second *Demetrius*.

BOOK *Sigismund King of Poland*, where they were

I. to use their utmost endeavours with that Prince and the republic, to recal the *Poles* and *Cossacks* in the service of this second impostor. *Demetrius* getting intelligence of his design, and knowing how advantageous it would be to his cause to have these persons in his power, sent a party of horse to intercept them, which they did without difficulty, and brought them to the camp towards the evening, where *Demetrius* received them in the fondest manner; but some of his party were not a little discouraged on observing a coldness on their side, *Maria Anne*, as well as her father, alledging that this *Demetrius* did not much resemble the murdered Emperor: but this was hushed with all possible care, and quarters were appointed them in the camp, at some distance from those of *Demetrius*. It was thought proper to conceal his having seen *Maria*, till he should have leisure to confer with her father and friends: they accordingly represented to her, that it would suit better with the present situation of her affairs as well as with her ambition, to adhere to this second *Demetrius*, whereby she might still become Empress of *Russia*, than to endeavour his ruin. These remonstrances had the desired effect; so that after a few days separation, on pretence of indisposition, she was willing to be

Intercepts  
*Maria*  
*Anne* in  
her way to  
*Poland*.

be conducted to the arms of her new *Demetrius*: but the affair was of so popular a nature, I. B O O K

it was thought proper it should be acted in the face of the world; and in order thereto, it was agreed, that *Demetrius* should meet his Empress in the face of the whole army, whilst the nobility and deputies of the provinces were upon the place. Their meeting was solemn and full of passion; they received each other with open arms, intermingling their tears with embraces. The business was acted so much to the life, that the most suspicious observers seemed entirely satisfied: *Maria Anne* mixed the testimonies of her love with so strong marks of esteem and respect to her lord and husband, and he returned his embraces with so lively a passion, that it drew tears of joy from the spectators: he also addressed himself in a particular manner to the Woywade of *Sandamir*, acknowledging the favours he had received from him in the infancy of his affairs; which they seemed both to remember with no small pleasure. Their extraordinary meeting.

This scene being over, every body seemed to be satisfied of the reality of *Demetrius*. Great numbers came to the camp from all quarters, in so much, that most of the provinces of the empire submitted to him, supplied his army with provisions, and all other necessities.

BOOK *Zusky*, with his army and the inhabitants

I. of *Moscow*, were reduced to great straits by the defection of the country; yet had the courage not to submit, but applied to *Charles IX.* King of *Sweden*, who, having usurped the crown from his nephew *Sigismund*, was fond of any opportunity to make him uneasy; and therefore sent them a considerable force under the command of two generals, *Evert Horn* and Count *Pontus de la Garde*, which was of great service to them the year following. The provinces were exhausted by intollerable contributions exacted by the *Poles*, who on that account became detestable to the *Russians*, and rendered the distractions of that vast empire universal. Even the camp was not without strong effects of them, which was evident by the dissention among the great ones, whereby many good opportunities were neglected. Hence arose a new face of affairs, and surprising vicissitudes every day happened; every thing seeming to conspire both against *Zusky* and *Demetrius*. The grandees on both sides, finding they could expect no calm so long as either sub-

*Zusky* sent  
prisoner to  
King *Sigismund*.

sisted; those at *Moscow* dethroned *Zusky*, shut him up in a cloister, and some time after sent him prisoner to *Sigismund*, with an offer of the *Russian* crown to his son *Uladislaus*; which was the only mean left to put an end to all differences. Upon this,

King

King *Sigismund* recalled his troops from the service of *Demetrius*, who, being at last abandoned on all sides, was murdered at *Calluga* by the *Tartars*. BOOK I.

King *Sigismund* received the *Russian* Ambassador as he lay with his army besieging *Smolensco*, and, having agreed to most of his demands, sent orders to his General, *Stanislaus Saliosky*, (who lay with an army near *Moscow*) to receive the submission of the *Russians*, and proclaim his son Emperor.

But some time after, the *Poles* carrying themselves insolently towards the *Russians*, and *Uladislaus* not appearing, they raised an army in conjunction with the *Swedes*, with design to drive the *Poles* out of the empire. At the same time, giving the *Swedish* General to understand, that his King's brother, *Charles Philip*, might very probably be elected Czar. The *Poles* being informed of this, set fire to the city of *Moscow* in several quarters, and inhumanly massacred an infinite number of the inhabitants; then plundered the treasury, the churches and convents, and retired towards their frontiers loaded with spoil; which misfortune the *Russians* feel to this day. The *Swedish* Generals having contributed not a little to the expelling of the *Poles*, and not thinking themselves sufficiently rewarded for their service, on their march homeward surprized and

The *Poles* burn *Moscow*.

BOOK and took the city of great *Novogrod*; to

I. redeem which, the *Russians* gave them all  
 Ingria. Thus fell that *Russian* province in-  
 Ingria  
 falls into the hands of Sweden. This treaty was  
 brought about by the mediation of King  
 of Swe- James VI. of Scotland and I. of England,  
 den. which occasioned Czar PETER more than  
 once to say, That he was more obliged to the  
 predecessors of the Chevalier de *St. George*,  
 than to all the monarchs of the world.

*End of the First Book.*

T H E

T H E  
H I S T O R Y  
O F  
*P E T E R* the *G R E A T*, &c.

---

B O O K II.  
*The History of* R U S S I A.

**A**FTER much bloodshed and many BOOK II. changes, in the year 1613, the *Russians* chose *Michael Theodorowich Romanow* for Emperor; whose father being Patriarch *Michael Theodorowich* elect-  
ed, 1613. at that time, it made his election easy. He is reckoned amongst the best of their Czars, having governed with prudence and decency. This Prince got the second false *Demetrius's* son, together with *Maria Anne* his mother into his power, whom he ordered to be thrust under the ice and drowned in the *Occa*. This action does not agree with his character of mildness; for, whatever he might have done with the son, the mother ought to have been spared, as in all her actions she showed spirit and mettle, and was exceeding beautiful.

BOOK A third *Demetrius* who made a bustle

II. for a while, was taken by the *Cossacks* near  
 ~~~~~  
 A third *Demetrius*. who caused him be executed publickly the
 day of his coronation. This Prince having

Alexis Michaelowich,
 1645.

Great disorders in
Russia.

made peace with all his neighbours, died in the year 1645, and was succeeded by his son *Alexis Michaelowich*: in whose minority, the ministry having more regard to their own interest than that of the public, vexed the people grievously, by imposing a high tax upon every thing, especially upon salt, brandy and tobacco, which occasioned a revolt over the whole city, and elsewhere: they fell upon the ministry, murdered several of them, and plundered their houses; and, it was with great difficulty the Czar prevailed with them to spare the life of his master of the household, *Boras Moroscow*. During this uproar, a fire broke out in the city, which consumed several thousands of houses, with many people; nor could the flames be got extinguished, till a cry went amongst the mob, that unless the corpse of the chancellor and of *Pleschow* were thrown into the flames, they would not go out. This was no sooner said than done; on which it is reported the flames ceased: but sure, this act of fury and barbarity should rather be stigmatized with just severity, than have miraculous successes ascribed to it. The people

at

at *Novogrod* and *Pleskow* also rebelled, so that the governors were obliged to leave the towns: but all being pacified at *Moscow*, the Czar ordered twelve thousand men to *Novogrod*, and the like number to *Pleskow*, whereupon they submitted.

But when all seemed to be in peace and quietness, both at home and abroad, a notorious rebel, whose name was *Stenko Razin*, a *Doncossack*, having got a good many loose people together, fell a robbing and plundering over all. *Stenko's* brother had commanded the *Doncossacks* some years before, under General Prince *George Dalgorky*, on the frontiers of *Poland*; and falling short of provisions, marched home with the *Cossacks*, without acquainting the commanding General, who, sending for him to know the cause of his leaving the army, and getting no satisfactory answer, caused hang him up without further ceremony. This was the occasion of *Stenko's* rebellion; who was so full of revenge, that he spared neither friend nor foe: *Russians* and *Persians* he murdered and plundered without distinction, till at last to put an end to his villanies, Prince *John Samolefwich Proforoskoy*, Governor of *Astracan*, marched against him with all the forces he could raise. *Stenko* not being able to oppose them, submitted to the Czar's clemency, promising on par-

The rebellion of
Stenko Razin.

BOOK don, to behave like a good subject for the

II. future; but this was only to gain time, for

in a few months after he appeared at the head of greater numbers, and by a promise of reward and bestowing his money liberally, he corrupted the inhabitants of *Astracan*; so that, when he came before the city

Stenko
seizes *A-*
Stracan.

early in a morning to attack it, they opened their gates and allowed him entrance. The

Governor suspecting no such thing, was in the church at prayers (as the *Russians* commonly are at that time): *Stenko* sent and caused tell him, that if he, with the officers of the garrison, would submit and acknowledge him for their sovereign, they should not only be safe, but meet with all encouragement; which they refusing, were instantly cut to pieces. Besides the Governor and his brother, there were several foreign officers put to death; amongst others, one Colonel *Baillie* a *Scotsman*. After this, he seized on the treasury, and plundered all the rich houses in the town, sparing neither church nor convent. From *Astracan* he marched against *Zaratow*, an other considerable town which he also took, using the inhabitants after the same manner. The like fate befel *Samara*, but *Simboskoy*, a strong place, held out vigorously against him; where, after having made several attacks, he was repulsed with considerable loss,

loss; which enraged him to that degree, that **Book** he vowed the destruction of the whole coun- **II.**try. This, several of his friends took a-
mifs, telling him, that by using such rigorous methods, he could not propose to gain the hearts of the people; that with the rich people in towns, he might do as he inclined, but the country ought to be preserved for his own sake. He had regard to their advice, and sent his declarations over the whole kingdom of *Astracan*, inviting all to come and join him, assuring them he would use them well, and free them from the oppression of the *Russians*: these promises had such an effect upon the country people (being generally fond of a change), that they went to him in multitudes, so that his army was exceedingly increased. He likewise sent emissaries into *Russia*, and even into the city of *Moscow*, who praised his moderation, and encouraged all to a general revolt: he thought of nothing less than dethroning the Czar, and making himself master of the empire.

The Czar seeing matters come to this extremity, sent a strong army against him, under the command of the same Prince *Dolgoruky*, who had caused hang *Stenko's* brother, as being the properest person to deal with him. *Stenko's* army was superior in

BOOK number to the Czar's, but neither so well
 II. armed nor commanded.

~~~~~ *Stenko* ordered a body of fifteen thousand chosen men to incommode the enemy, commanding them expressly not to give battle, till he should come up with the gross of the army, to make sure of a compleat victory; for by defeating this army, he hoped to become master of the whole empire: but Prince *Dolgoruky* was so lucky as to surprize and cut in pieces this advanced body, taking several thousand prisoners; so that few escaped. He then marched straight against the main body of the rebels, who were encamped near a town called *Arsamis*, where, in their view, to strike the more terror, he caused hang up all the prisoners in their shirts: this had the desired effect, for the night following, many of *Stenko's* principal friends, amongst others, *Asbo* and *Morako*, together with his nephew, went and submitted to the Czar. Then finding himself abandoned by those in whom he most confided, and fearing lest he should be taken and delivered up by his own people, he went off and left his army, recommending the command to his companion *Sioretas*; whom he ordered back to *Astracan*, to keep out that town, till he should assemble more forces to continue the war with the better success; but, the army, after they came to  
*Astracan,*

Is abandoned by his friends.

*Astracan*, took *Sioretas*, bound him hand and foot, and drowned him in the *Wolga*, then surrendered the town to the Czar. B O O K II.

*Stenko* with his brother, and a few more, went to *Saritzza*, in hopes to prevail with the *Doncoffacks* to join him; but the *Hettman Jaculow*, instead of that, caused apprehend him with his brother *Froika*, and sent them both in chains to *Moscow*; where *Stenko* was broke upon the wheel, and the rebellion extinguished. The end of *Stenko*. Being asked how he durst take up arms against the Czar, and commit such horrid barbarities, and what he designed further? he replied, that he designed to march to the city of *Moscow*, and destroy all the boyars, Prince *Dolgoruky* amongst the first; who had been the occasion of all this work. His brother *Froika*, as he was going to the block, called out that he wanted to speak with the Czar, having something to discover, which without him he never could come to the knowledge of: it being asked what that was, he replied, that he would discover it to none but the Emperor himself; whereupon, he was admitted into the Czar's presence, who pardoned him on discovering where his brother's treasure lay.

Czar *Alexis Michaelowich*, being temporary with *Oliver Cromwell*, had so great an abhorrence of his rebellion and rebellious practices, that he caused banish all the

*Czar Alexis banishes the English merchants.*

**BOOK** the *English* merchants out of his dominions, particularly, the factory at *Archangel*, which was not re-established till after the restoration of King *Charles II.* and even then, he obliged them to pay high taxes and duties, which they had not been in use to pay before.

A new Impostor.

During this Prince's reign, a new impostor started up in *Poland*, whose name was *Timoska*, giving himself out to be the son of *Zusky*. On the arrival of an Ambassador from *Russia* to the King at *Warsaw*, he left *Poland*, and betook himself to the famous *Schmilnisky*, General of the *Cossacks*; by whom he was well received and entertained, till an envoy from the Czar to that General remonstrated against it: from thence he retired to *Constantinople*, where he turned *Turk*; and from that place, as the story goes, he went to *Rome* and became roman catholick, and so wandered about from place to place, till at last he came to *Holstein*, where he was known by a *Russian* commissary, who caused him be imprisoned. After being confined a whole year, he was delivered up to the Czar, who caused cut off his head at *Moscow*.

His fate,

Czar *Alexis* retook from the *Poles* during their wars with the *Turks*, the towns of *Smolensko*, *Kiow* and *Cherniskow*; which they had kept possession of since the time of

of the second false *Demetrius*. About this Book time the *Cossacks* having had long and II. bloody wars with the *Poles*, (by whom they had been oppressed) by agreement with the Czar, crossed the *Boristhenes* to the number of fifty thousand families, taking along with them all they could carry, and settled in the *Ukraine*, under the Czar's protection; where they have ever since continued, and increased to triple that number, and can now bring into the field an army of sixty, seventy, or one hundred thousand men; but, as the world now goes, bad troops, and without discipline.

This Emperor was twice married: his first Empress was *Mary Illinifna*, daughter to *Illia Donilowich Miloslatsky*, a boyar; by whom, he had four sons and five daughters. His eldest son *Alexowich*, born in the year 1653, was candidate for the crown of *Poland* after King *Casimir's* demise: this Prince died in the year 1670. His second son, *Theodore*, lived to succeed him: *Michael*, his third son, died in the year 1679; and *John*, his fourth son, succeeded his brother *Theodore*. *Irene*, his eldest daughter, died in the year 1678: *Sophia*, his second, was she that occasioned so much trouble to PETER the Great: *Maria Anne*, the third, died young: *Katharine*, and *Maria Alexewna*, the fourth and fifth, both lived to a great

BOOK great age. His second Empress was *Natal-*

II. *lia Karilowna*, daughter to *Karil Naritskin*,  
 (at that time a Colonel of the *Strelitzes*).

PETER  
 the Great  
 born,  
 1672.

The Czar took a fancy to this lady on account of her great beauty: by this marriage he had the Emperor PETER the Great, born June 11th 1672, and a Princess of incomparable beauty, whose name was *Natallia Alexcewna*.

A fifth im  
 postor.

During the reign of *Uladislaus* King of *Poland*, there appeared a genteel young man about his court, who was by birth a *Cossack*; and being at a certain time in the bath with some of his acquaintances, they discovered some characters on his back, which they could make nothing of; nor did he pretend to know any thing about them himself. The Crown-treasurer being informed of this, sent for the young man, and, after having asked him several questions about his birth and parents, he sent for a *Russian* priest, who in the Treasurer's presence, (the young man putting off his cloaths) read the following words: DEMETRIUS, SON TO THE EMPEROR DEMETRIUS: on which the Treasurer carried him directly to the King, who, willing to embrace all occasions that could create trouble to the *Russians*, caused appoint him an equipage, and declare him heir to the *Russian* empire. The story was given out thus: 'That the Woy-  
 ' wode



‘ wode of *Sandamir*’s daughter, *Mariana*, Book  
 ‘ had been delivered of him during the time II.  
 ‘ of her imprisonment, and had caused con-  
 ‘ vey him safe away, with these characters  
 ‘ imprinted on his back, whereby he might  
 ‘ afterwards be known.’ But King *Ulidi-*  
*flaus* dying soon after, his successor, *John*  
*Cassimir*, appearing to live in better corre-  
 spondence with the *Russians*, he thought  
 himself no more in safety at the *Polish*  
 court, but retired privately to *Revel*; and  
 from thence into *Sweden*, where, not think-  
 ing himself safe either, he went into *Hol-*  
*stein*, where he was imprisoned, and by that  
 Duke delivered up to the Czar, for discharg-  
 ing a debt he was owing to the *Russian* court.

It was generally believed that King *Ula-*  
*dislaus*, being a Prince of mettle and activity,  
 had contrived and spirited up this last im-  
 postor, to afford him a plausible pretence for  
 invading *Russia* with a powerful army in  
 conjunction with the *Cossacks*, *Tartars* and  
 disaffected *Russians*, in hopes of making  
 himself master of the empire; for, he never  
 could digest the loss of it, after having been  
 solemnly proclaimed Czar.

Towards the latter end of Czar *Alexis*’s  
 life, *Poland* was like to have been swallow-  
 ed up by the *Turks*, *Tartars*, and rebellious  
*Cossacks*; but notwithstanding the animosity  
 and hatred that subsisted betwixt the *Poles*

BOOK and *Russians*, the Czar did not think it con-

II. venient to allow *Poland* to become a province of the *Ottoman* empire. This he found the *Turks* were aiming at; he therefore sent an Ambassador to the Grand Seignior, desiring him to desist from hostilities against *Poland*, else he should be obliged to join that nation with all his force. The *Turks* not regarding this embassy, continued to harass *Poland*; whereupon the Czar caused march an army of an hundred thousand men into the *Ukraine*, under the command of Prince *Dolgoruky*, who after having given a notable defeat to the *Cossacks*, and forced their General to retire into a strong place, called *Shegreen*, besieged it, and in a few weeks obliged *Dorofinsky* General of the *Cossacks*, together with all in the place, to surrender at discretion, notwithstanding all the endeavours the *Turks* and *Tartars* used to relieve it: they then fell into the *Ukraine* by *Dorofinsky's* advice, burnt a great many towns, and laid waste a great part of that fertile country.

Alexis dies. Czar Alexis Michaelowich died in the year 1675, aged forty-six, and was succeeded by his son *Theodore*. The new Czar Theodore. entered into a treaty with *Poland*, to continue the war against the *Turks*; who the year after, with a powerful army (the Grand Vizier at their head) besieged *Shegreen*, where,

where, Prince *Dolgoruky* after having repaired the fortifications, had left a sufficient garrison under the command of a *Russian* gentleman, *Iwan Michaelowich Argisky*; who during the siege being killed by a bomb, Colonel *Patrick Gordon*, the next commanding officer, was declared Governor, and defended the town to the last. Prince *Romodanosky*, who was ordered by the Czar with an army of an hundred thousand men, not only to put succours into the place, but to force the *Turks* to abandon the siege, did neither, but came up with this great army and encamped within view of the town, without attempting any thing farther; and remained in this inactivity, till the *Turks* in his sight took the place by assault. When Colonel *Gordon* perceived that all was lost, he took the advantage of the confusion, and made his way through the enemy, with one officer only, in a very extraordinary manner, and got to the *Russian* camp next morning, almost dead with wounds, hunger and fatigue. After the town was taken, Prince *Romodanosky* retreated with the army under his command to the frontiers of *Russia*: his conduct in this campaign was so much blamed, that he fell into disgrace, and was never after employed. Colonel *Gordon's* behaviour was so much approved of, that he was advanced to the

BOOK rank of Major-General, and ordered to

II. command the troops in and about *Kiow*.

~ The *Turks* after having made themselves masters of *Shegreen*, did not think it worth their while to keep a garrison in a place so far distant from their frontiers, they therefore demolished the fortifications, and burnt the town to ashes, then retired towards the *Danube*. *John Sobiesky* being now King of *Poland*, and having beat the *Turks* in several battles, had so humbled them, that they concluded a peace with the Czar, who since his accession to the throne, had been continually engaged in war.

The *Turks*  
make  
peace with  
the Czar.

The Czar having made peace with his neighbours, resolved to marry a lady of *Polish* extraction, whose name was *Maria Eufimona Guchifska*; whereat the patriarch and nobility were highly dissatisfied, but the Czar was positive: and, when the patriarch came to dissuade him from marrying a foreigner, he declared, that if he was not allowed to marry her, he should never think of any other. Then, said the patriarch, since it is your majesty's pleasure, none ought to find fault with it. The marriage was solemnized a few days after; but the lady died in child-bed within the year, and it was believed, that the midwives did not do their duty, but suffered the mother and child both to perish.

The Czar  
marries.

The Cza-  
rina dies.

The

The Czar had so great a love for this Book lady, that he never could be comforted after her death. The reason why the nation in general had a dislike to this marriage, was, that hitherto the Czars had been in use of chusing their consorts from among the ladies of their own country. When the Czar wanted a wife, all the celebrated beauties of the empire were brought to court, where they continued for some time, and, whoever the Prince liked best he made choice of, dismissing the rest with presents. The father, or the nearest of kin to the Empress, became of course prime minister, and had the sole management of affairs; which every one is ambitious of: and, as in such a case there must be many disappointed, they comforted themselves with this, that they might be more successful at another time. But when the Czar married with a foreign Princess, none of them have any such title; for then, merit, or rather favour takes place.

Czar *Theodore*, much against his inclination, was after this lady's death prevailed with to marry a young lady of the *Appraxin* family; by whom he had no issue, but soon after sickened and died of melancholy.

As he lay on his death-bed, the *Strelitzes* marched into the city in a tumultuous manner, giving out that they were ill used by their

II.

The Czar's second marriage and death.

The insurrection of the *Strelitzes*.

BOOK their colonels, particularly by Colonel Simon Griboedoff; who, they said, had obliged them to carry materials for building his house, near *Moscow*, in the *Easter* week, when they should have been employed about their devotions, (as the *Russians* at such festivals commonly are). They had drawn up a petition to the Czar demanding redress of this, and all other grievances; which was presented in a very threatening manner by one of the most forward of them, upon the 15th of *April* 1682, as Czar *Theodore* was struggling with death. The boyar, Prince *George Dolgoruky*, caused acquaint the *Strelitz* who had presented the petition, to repair next morning to the chancery, where the Czar's pleasure should be declared to him; and in the mean time gave orders to *Damonoi Jaisucoff*, that how soon the *Strelitz* appeared, he should be taken into custody and carried to the parade, there to receive so many lashes with the knout, (a punishment almost equal to death) for daring to present so insolent a petition to his majesty: the *Strelitz* went to the chancery next morning, where he was immediately seized, and carried to the parade; at which place the *Strelitzes* kept guard. As the executioner was stripping off his cloaths, after sentence read, in presence of the guard, he called out to his companions, Brethren, what

I have done is by all your advices and con-**BOOK**  
sent, so, I hope you will not suffer such **II.**  
an indignity and affront to be put upon  
me in your presence for a supposed crime,  
of which we are all equally guilty. He had  
no sooner spoke these words, than the guards  
laid hands on the executioners, and beat  
them so severely, that they left them half  
dead upon the spot: the Diak who was to  
have witnessed the execution, saved himself  
by the swiftness of his horse.

After this, the *Strelzites* gathered together  
in multitudes, to complain of most of their  
colonels to the Czar: they had agreed to ac-  
cuse nine, and if redress was denied them,  
were to take satisfaction at their own hands.  
The next day being *Wednesday* the 17th of  
*April*, Czar *Theodore* dying at four of the  
clock afternoon, the *Strelitzes* were ordered  
to repair to the parade, to kiss the cross to  
the two Czars, *John* and *Peter*, (kissing of  
the cross was the only oath that had hi-  
therto been tendered in this country): the  
reason why both the Czars were proclaimed  
together, was, that *John*, the eldest, on ac-  
count of his infirmities and blindness, was  
not capable to take the burden of the go-  
vernment on himself alone; therefore, the  
young Prince, *Peter*, was joined with him.  
These ceremonies being over, the *Strelzites*  
repaired to their respective quarters, and  
continued

*John and  
Peter pro-  
claimed.*

BOOK continued to live peaceably till the 28th;

II. when the corpse of Czar *Theodore* was interred: but on the 29th (being *Saturday*) they assembled and marched in great numbers to the palace gates, requiring without delay, that the two Czars should cause arrest nine of their colonels, and punish them for the crimes they had to lay to their charge, otherwise they would be obliged to cut their throats, plunder their houses, and one way or other satisfy themselves: they further threatned, that if these demands were not immediately complied with, not only these nine colonels, but several other persons of higher rank should be taken to task. The court, who heartily wished to put an end to these disorders, the day following caused put the nine colonels in arrest; and further promised, that the *Strelitzes* should have all manner of justice done them: they were not satisfied with this, but would have the colonels delivered up to them, that they might punish them as they inclined. The affair came to such a height, that the court was obliged to send a metropolitan, and several other bishops to appease the tumult: the *Strelitzes* were immediately paid up all their claims, the nine colonels disgraced, and beat in their presence with the battogues, and new ones put in their places; wherewith they seemed satisfied at present.

But



But these fierce people were not really BOOK  
 satisfied with all this condescension; and II.  
 what they had already done, was but a pre-  
 lude to a far greater tragedy, which soon  
 followed; being encouraged and pushed on  
 thereto by Czar *John's* kindred on the mo-  
 ther's side, particularly by the boyar, Prince  
*Havansky*. The *Strelitzes* desired to speak  
 with Czar *John*, that they might be inform-  
 ed from himself, if he was really inclined  
 to have his brother Prince *Peter* joined in  
 the government with him: for, they had  
 been made believe that all Czar *John's* kin-  
 dred were turned out of office, and Prince  
*Peter's*, viz. the *Naritskins*, put in their  
 places; that *Naritskin* his grandfather, was  
 become prime minister; his sons young men,  
 (the eldest not above twenty years) *John*,  
 and *Affonacie*, the one made Treasurer, and  
 the other General of the artillery, in place  
 of *Alexis Lescow*, and his brother *Michael*,  
 near kinsmen to Czar *John*.

The boyar *Artemon Jeurewich* was recal-  
 led from exile, and ordered to prepare for  
 court; who, as he came near to *Moscow*,  
 finding matters in so great confusion, occa-  
 sioned by the uproar of the *Strelitzes*, would  
 not enter that city, but continued at some  
 distance, until one of the Czar's coaches  
 was sent to bring him with more honour.  
 When he appeared at court he was graci-

BOOK II. ously received by the two Czars, the Em-

II. prels [dowager, and the princesses: the *Strelitzes* themselves welcomed him after the manner of the country, by presenting him with bread and salt; which is the greatest mark of respect that can be put upon any person. This minister had fallen into disgrace with Czar *Theodore*, for having too warmly opposed his marriage with the *Polish* lady, he was forfeited and sent into banishment: but, it had been better for him he had continued a while longer in disgrace. He no sooner appeared at court, than he began to find fault with all their proceedings, alledging, that they should not have yielded in the minutest point to the rebels: and thus far, he was surely in the right, if any resolute person had been at hand with a body of faithful troops to have opposed them; but at this juncture it was not the case, for the *Strelitzes* were the guards, and no other troops near *Moscow*. He also found fault with the advancement of the *Naritskins*, alledging that it was too soon, before the government was entirely settled in Prince *Peter's* person.

*Havansky* with his *Strelitzes*, were in the mean time contriving farther mischiefs: they were not ignorant of what passed at court, and fearing, that sooner or latter they might be called to account for what they had already

already done, they spread a false report amongst the people, as if *John Naritskin*, the Empress dowager's brother, had clothed himself with the Czar's robes, and placed himself on the imperial throne, saying, that it became no man in the whole *Russian* empire to represent the Czar, better than himself; that thereupon the Empress dowager, Princess *Sophia*, and the two Czars, *John* and *Peter*, took him heartily to task for such insolence, but that he without regard, stepped down from the throne, seized Czar *John* by the throat; and, had he not been prevented by the Empresses and princesses, would have instantly strangled him.

This ridiculous story was handed about amongst the populace, to cover their mischievous designs, and to render the family of *Naritskin* still more odious: immediately, the *Strelitzes* marched in great numbers to the palace, armed, calling out all the way as they passed, that *John Naritskin* had almost murdered Czar *John*, inviting all to take arms for his rescue: a party of them went to ring the great bell, which is never done but on extraordinary occasions, and by order: another party went to secure the palace gates, that none who were within might escape. The lords who were there sitting in council, began to think of their own safety, and designed to make their

The *Strelitzes* grow more insolent.

BOOK escape; but the *Strelitzes* had by this time,

II. not only broke their coaches to pieces, but  
 taken away their horses, and after having placed guards all round the palace, a party of them went into the court, desiring to speak with Czar *John*, who immediately appearing with his full sister *Sophia*, they made a low bow, and spoke to him after this manner: ' You are our Emperor, may God long preserve you, but let traitors perish.' They desired him to take the government in his own person, and neither divide it, nor renounce it in favours of his brother Prince *Peter*: this he promised to comply with. Then, they insisted on having all the traitors delivered up to them; in the first place, old *Naritskin* and his son *John*, and, in short, the whole family, that they might be cut off root and branch: only (said they), let the Empress dowager, *Natallia Karilowna*, be sent to a cloister for the rest of her days, for we will with our blood, guard and preserve our Czar *John*, and Prince *Peter*, against all their enemies.

The boyar *Artemon Jeurewich*, and Prince *Michael Jeurewich Dolgoruky*, went out in a very complaisant manner to commune with them, desiring to know what they wanted: but they, without allowing these gentlemen to speak any more, said, You are the greatest

est traitors; laid forthwith hands upon them, Book  
 and threw them down amongst their com- II.  
 panions, by whom they were unmercifully  
 butchered, and their bodies carried off and <sup>Their</sup>  
 exposed in the publick market-place: after <sup>bloody</sup>  
 which, they called for the rest of the trait- <sup>rage.</sup>  
 tors, that they might make an end of them  
 all, and gave in a list of forty-six persons, all  
 of high rank. Then seeing no body more  
 would venture out amongst them, nor make  
 them any farther reply, they forced their way  
 without respect to the Czars and princesses  
 apartments, laid hold on *Affonacie Naritskin*,  
 one of the Empress's brothers, dragged him  
 forth, and dispatched him, as they had done  
 the two lords before: then, they seized on  
 the *Dumenie Loriwon*, with his son *Basil*,  
 and served them in the like manner. They  
 cried without intermission, Long live Czar  
*John* and Prince *Peter*, but may all traitors  
 die. After this, they demanded that *John*  
*Naritskin* should be given up to them; but  
 as this was not granted, they searched for  
 him in all corners, till at last they laid hands  
 on *Peter Theodorowich Sulticow*, whom  
 they took for *Naritskin*, and threw him out  
 of the window, where he was instantly  
 murdered, tho' they had no intention to  
 hurt any of that family; for, if he had but  
 spoke and told who he was when they laid  
 hands on him, he had been safe, but he  
 had

BOOK had not the resolution to utter one word,

II. As soon as they discovered their mistake, they carried the corpse to his father's house, told that they had killed his son ignorantly, and begged pardon. The father was constrained to seem pleased, and entertain them with strong liquor. They next unmercifully put to death the old General, Prince *Romodanosky*, but his son they spared, for his having been detained a good number of years amongst the *Tartars*. Towards evening, old Prince *George Dolgoruky* was killed: as he passed through the great market-place, going to his own house, a good many of the *Strelitzes* went out of respect on each side his coach to wait on him home; making apologies for killing his son, saying they had no design on any of his family; but that he had appeared with *Artemon* and spoke harshly, and that they had done in the heat of passion what they wished not to have done. The old Prince was forced to suppress his concern, and when he entered into his own house, called for liquors to entertain them with; but the princesses, his lady and daughter, were not to be comforted, which made the old man say, forbear weeping, for though my son be dead, he has still two sons who may live; which unguarded expression cost him his life: for, they took it as a threatening, that his

his sons might live one day to revenge their father's death; and forthwith murdered him in his own house. BOOK II.

The night following the *Strelitzes* continued about the palace, keeping strong guards, and sent parties to the houses of those they had a design on, but found no body, every one taking care to make his escape in time. In all the houses they searched, nothing was plundered, they kepted so good order.

Next morning, they sent a party to the quarter where all the foreigners lived, called *Nemetsky Slaboda*, to make search for the Czar's physician, Doctor *Daniel*, a Jew, giving out that he had poisoned the late Czar *Theodore*. They did not find him at home, but there lived in the neighbourhood another of the Czar's physicians, called *John Goodmerk*, into whose house they went, and said to him, You and Doctor *Daniel* are good friends, therefore you certainly must know where he is, and till he be found, we will not part with you. It was in vain to offer any reason to these people; for notwithstanding all he could say, they carried him with his wife, then big with child, to their guard.

All this time they continued searching in the imperial apartments for *John Naritskin*, whom not finding, unluckily they met with the

BOOK the boyar *John Maximowich*, together with  
 II. the *Dumenie*, *Stephen Crilow* and *Gregory*  
 ~~~~~ *Garassim* one of their Colonels, whom they  
 instantly butchered. A little after, they
 chanced to meet with Doctor *Daniel's* son,
 a youth not full twenty years; who not be-
 ing able to discover where his father was,
 they quickly made an end of him.

Then they laid hands on Doctor *Good-merk*, saying, since *Daniel* is not to be found, this man must suffer for him, and instantly murdered him. They designed likewise to have killed his wife, but the Empress and princesses interceded for her. Then *Basil Philomenow*, a kinsman of the *Naritskins*, together with *Andrew Dolenow* another of their Colonels, whom they found concealed under the great altar of the Emperor's chapel, with several lawyers and writers, they put unmercifully to death.

At last the Empress dowager begged on her knees the life of her old father, *Karil Naritskin*; which they granted, on condition that he should forthwith retire into a convent, and his younger son be sent to some remote place into banishment.

On the 17th of *May*, the unhappy Doctor *Daniel* fell into their hands, after having wandered about in disguise for two days and two nights: being like to perish for want of food, he went into a friend's
 house,

house, asking for somewhat to eat and Book
 drink; but this false friend, instead of re- II.
 lieving his necessities, delivered him up to
 the *Strelitzes*; who, notwithstanding the
 Empress dowager and Princess *Sophia's* in-
 tercession, put him to death.

After this, they cried out, we know very
 well that *John Naritskin* is concealed by you
 in the palace, therefore, without more ado
 deliver him up to us, and we shall remit
 those of the traitors that as yet remain un-
 punished, to the Czar's justice: with this
 proviso, that we be pardoned, and what we
 have done regarded as a service to the state,
 and not as a rebellion. Whereupon, the
 Empress declared that all their demands
 should be granted, only begged, that her
 brother *John* might be spared; but they
 called out more vehemently, give him up
 to us without delay, or we will search till
 we find him, and make things still worse:
 we have spared the father and younger chil-
 dren, but *John* must suffer by our hands.
 At last, when nothing could prevail, the
 Empress dowager and Princess *Sophia*, toge-
 ther with the metropolitan carrying a cruci-
 fix in his hand, and *John Naritskin* in a
 suppliant manner, all begged to save his
 life; but, they without any regard, took
 hold of him by his long hair, dragged him
 forth in their sight, and put him unmerci-
 fully

BOOK fully to death, calling out, now we are sa-

II. tisfied, his Czarish majesty, whom God
 ~~~~~ long preserve, may do with the rest of the  
 traitors as he shall incline.

The two Czar's en- After which, Czar *John* appeared, and  
 deavoured to stituted that on account of his weak con-  
 pacify them. dition and incapacity, he might be allow-  
 ed to join in the government with him, his  
 brother Prince *Peter*; whereupon, they all  
 cried out, God preserve our Prince *Peter*  
*Alexowich*; who also appearing, intreated  
 that his mother the Empress dowager might  
 not be sent to the cloister; which was also  
 agreed to.

It cannot but seem surprising, that so  
 many great men, with their friends and ser-  
 vants, to the number of some hundreds  
 within the palace, did not rather fall out  
 upon the rebels like men of honour, sword  
 in hand, for the worst was but death, than  
 allow themselves thus to be murdered one af-  
 ter another; for who knows what a few reso-  
 lute men might have done. But, it is to  
 be considered, that at this time there was  
 little spirit or resolution in the nation; be-  
 sides, they never carried arms of any kind,  
 but when they marched to the field against  
 their enemies.

Their pre- During these three days tumult the *Stre-*  
 tence, and *litzes* gave out, that all they did, was for  
 the true the safety of Czar *John*; though the real  
 cause

cause was, the encouragement they met Book II.  
 with from several of the grandees (whereof *Havansky* was chief), who secretly spirited them up to cut off the *Naritskins* to a man. cause of their rebellion.  
 They from an obscure family, had risen to that height of power and greatness, by their daughter's being married to the Emperor, that they got the entire management of the state; whereby they were enabled to enrich themselves and friends, to the great detriment of the principal families of the empire.

The emperors of *Russia* for some ages before *Peter* the Great, were never seen by their subjects in time of peace, but on extraordinary occasions, such as great festivals, and even then, were only exposed as reliques; so that all affairs were directed and managed by the Empress's nearest of kin, which is the reason, as is already hinted, that the nation was so unwilling their Czar should marry any but one of his own subjects; which keeps them all in expectation some time or other to get into the management. The indolent manner the Czars used to live in.

But the Emperor *Peter* the Great came to think otherwise, though he had whilst very young been persuaded by his mother, to marry a *Russian* lady of quality, which he heartily regreted afterwards, as will soon appear: neither did he think himself nor the government secure, until the very me-

*Czar Peter* early disapproves of their conduct.

BOOK memory of the *Strelitzes* should be abolished;

II. who had been the instruments of all the insurrections and revolts, during his grandfather's, his father's, and his own time; proceeding indeed, from the tyrannical administration of those in power, and fomented by the factious nobility, who wanted to have a hand in the management: to remedy which, Czar *Peter* resolved to take the management into his own hands.

Matters again quiet.

The fury of the *Strelitzes* being over, and all peaceable in the empire, the two Czars, *John* and *Peter*, were crowned with great solemnity. They sent first an Ambassador into *Sweden*, to confirm and continue the peace with that crown: another was sent to *Constantinople*, where the truce was renewed for some years: a third was sent into *Poland*, but at that time without effect, the *Poles* insisting to have *Kiow* and *Smolensko* restored.

Czar *John* married.

Czar *John* this year (infirm as he was) married, by the advice of his sister Princess *Sophia*, and the rest of his mother's friends, a young lady of the *Sublecow* family, in hopes he might have a son, to exclude his brother *Peter*. A few days after the marriage solemnities were over, an Ambassador arrived from the Emperor of *Germany*, to treat of peace and alliance betwixt the two empires; which had the desired effect. A

Several ambassadors arrive in *Russia*.

peace

peace was also concluded with the republic **BOOK**  
of *Poland*, on this condition, that the *Poles* **II.**  
should for ever give up their right to *Kiow*  
and *Smolensko*. The King of *Sweden* sent  
also an Ambassador to *Moscow*, desiring  
that the Czars might confirm the peace with  
that crown. A resident also arrived from  
*Holland*, to treat of alliance and com-  
merce.

Peace con-  
cluded  
with *Pol-*  
*and*,  
1683.

The *Poles*, not content with the treaty  
agreed on the preceeding year, a war was  
like to ensue, and therefore, the two Czars  
caused march a considerable army towards  
the *Polish* frontiers; but they were for  
peace, and declared themselves willing to  
continue the same, on the terms of the last  
treaty concluded with Czar *Alexis Michaelo-*  
*wich*, so no rupture ensued.

The *Poles*  
discontent,  
1684.

The Czars  
send an ar-  
my to the  
frontiers  
of *Poland*.

The Czars sent also this year, Prince  
*James Dolgoruky* Ambassador, first to *France*,  
then to *Spain*, to intimate their accession to  
the throne; which was so well received by  
*Lewis XIV.* that a treaty of commerce and  
alliance was entered into.

The year following, the *Poles* sent a  
splendid embassy to *Moscow*, in order to  
establish a lasting peace, to which the elector  
of *Brandeburgh* did not a little contribute;  
and which was concluded on the following  
conditions, viz. that *Russia* should, in all  
time coming, keep possession of *Kiow* and  
*Smolensko*;

Another  
peace con-  
cluded  
with *Pol-*  
*and*.

BOOK *Smolensko*; for which the two Czars were

II. to pay as an equivalent, a million and an half *Polish* guilders, one half this year, and the other the next. That the *Poles* should not protect the *Russian Cossacks*, nor the *Russians* the *Polish*; that the two Czars should make war upon the *Turks*, in conjunction with the Emperor of *Germany*, the crown of *Poland*, and the states of *Venice*, and enter into no treaty, nor make peace, any one without the rest.

Prince *Galitzin* makes great preparation against the *Turks*.

Attacks them without success.

In the year 1687, Prince *Basil Galitzin* being at the head of affairs, during the incapacity of Czar *John*, and nonage of Czar *Peter*, he made mighty preparations for a war against the *Turks*. Leaving his son, by the advice of Princess *Sophia*, to direct matters at *Moscow*, he marched into the field with an army of two hundred thousand men; made to himself a great party, distributing his posts and favours to none but those he imagined would answer his design in all events; turning out of command, and sending into banishment all whom he judged capable to oppose him: but though he had a numerous army, both of *Russians* and *Cossacks*, yet he was unsuccessful. The *Turks* and *Tartars* broke in upon the right wing of his army, killed and took prisoners upwards of thirty thousand men; upon which he was forced to retreat, and arriving  
at

at *Bellogrod*, to throw the odium off him-  
self, he caused invite the *Hettman* of the  
*Ukraine Cossacks*, *Juan Samuelowich*, to-  
gether with his son to dine with him. The  
good old *Hettman* suspecting no harm, ac-  
cordingly went, but they had no sooner  
entered the Prince's tent than they were  
both made prisoners. The *Hettman*  
he sent to *Siberia* under a strong guard,  
and caused strike off the son's head on  
the front of the army; giving out, that  
they had been the occasion of the bad suc-  
cess of the campaign, by giving intelligence  
to the enemy. Then, he declared *John Ma-*  
*zepa, Hettman*, a minion of his, with whom  
he had concerted this affair, and who had  
been Secretary to the late *Hettman*: then,  
having ordered the army into their several  
quarters, he returned to *Moscow*, giving out  
at court, that he had gained a great victory,  
and was well received by the two Czars,  
but particularly by the Princess *Sophia*;  
who was by this means brought into the  
government, together with her two bro-  
thers. She was a Princess of a masculine  
spirit, unlimited ambition, and great parts:  
and had not providence wonderfully pre-  
served the two Czars, she had infallibly cut  
off both, stepped herself into the throne, and  
made Prince *Basil Galitzen* partner of her  
sceptre

BOOK sceptre and bed, though he had a wife,  
 II. whom he designed to shut up in a cloister.

*Havansky* Prince *Havansky*, who was the principal promoter of the last great rebellion of the *Strelitzes*, thought nothing too great or difficult for him. He had formed a design some time before to get his son married to one of Princess *Sophia's* sisters, the Princess *Katharine*, and had the assurance to propose the match to the first mentioned Princess, to know her thoughts: she seemed to approve of it, and, after having communicated it to her favourite Prince *Basil*, they concluded, that being so dangerous a man, (as having so great authority over the *Strelitzes*) both he and his son should be put out of the way. Whereupon, the Princess made an entertainment, to which *Havansky* and his son were invited; which they took as a good omen of future success: but it proved otherwise, for they caused way-lay and murder them, and made it pass as if they had been attacked by highway-men. Then *Shoclowitow*, a man fittest of any for their purpose, was placed at the head of the *Strelitzes*. It is thought, that if Prince *Havansky* had proposed his son to the Princess *Sophia* herself, he might have succeeded; but the making choice of the younger sister was the occasion of their fall.

Czar



Czar *Peter* having attained to his sixteenth year, was by the advice of the Empress dowager, his mother, married to *Eudoxia Theodorowna Lapachin*, daughter to the boyar *Theodore Abramowich*, an antient and rich family in that country; which was no small mortification to the Princess *Sophia* and her favourite. Sometime after the marriage solemnity was over, Prince *Borris Alexowich Galitzin*, a faithful subject of Czar *Peter's*, coming timely to penetrate into his kinsman Prince *Basil's* designs, put the young Czar upon his guard, advising him without delay to take the government into his own hands, which required to be done circumspectly, *Basil* being a man of so great power.

BOOK II.  
Czar *Peter* marries, 1688.

Is advised to take the government on himself.

In the mean time, he undertakes his second expedition against the *Turks*, but with no better success than before; and on his return to *Moscow*, was refused access to Czar *Peter*; which made him apprehend the worst. Being informed by the spies he always kept about the Czar's person, of all that passed at court, particularly of *Peter's* design of taking the management on himself, which none of his family had ever done; and being on the brink of perishing, together with his ambitious designs, he took a desperate course, and employed *Russians* to murder Czar *Peter*. *Schoclowitow* was the

Prince *Basil* attacks the *Turks* a second time, but without success.

He forms a design of cutting off Czar *Peter*.

BOOK II. person they pitched upon to execute this black design, as the fittest instrument, (being at the head of the *Strelitzes*) who undertook it chearfully, looking on Princess *Sophia* as his future sovereign: he thought there was no time to be lost, but forthwith got together about six hundred of the *Strelitzes*, with a Colonel and other officers whom he could trust; and, having on the parade declared his design, he promised great rewards to every one, and then marched towards *Petraskinsky*, where Czar *Peter* with his Empress lived: but two of the party, who were not so cruelly inclined as the rest, went in all haste and informed the Czar of his danger. He was unwilling to believe it, till Prince *Boris Galitzin*, together with his uncle *Theodore Naritskin*, went to discover what truth was in the matter. Having seen the party marching in great haste, they returned to the Czar, who had scarce time to make his escape, with his Empress (then big with child) and a few of his friends: they all went to a convent, called *Troista*, or *Trinity*, about sixty wersts distant from *Moscow*. *Shochlowitow* getting notice that the Czar with his friends were retired, returned to the Princess in great confusion and rage, for having missed his aim.

The conspiracy discovered.

Czar *Peter* and his Empress retire,

Czar

Czar *Peter's* faithful servants no sooner **BOOK** heard of the danger his majesty was in, then **II.** they repaired to him in multitudes; amongst the first, General *Patrick Gordon* of *Achleucheries*, with his regiment, and all the foreign officers went to him, so that in less than three days, the Czar had above sixty thousand men to guard him back to *Moscow*; whither he returned on the fourth, to the great joy of the inhabitants, and all others, Prince *Basil* excepted; who not knowing what course to take, went in despair and threw himself at Czar *Peter's* feet, professing his innocence, and that he knew nothing of the matter. He was immediately taken into custody, his whole estate confiscated, and himself sent to *Colmogrod*, a small town in *White-Russia*, not far distant from *Archangel*, where he ended his days: the Czar, on his kinsman Prince *Boris's* account, spared his life. It had been the custom formerly, that if any one of a family was found to be engaged in a conspiracy against the sovereign, the whole family, man, wife and child, and all its relations, either by blood or alliance, suffered alike; which custom Czar *Peter* abolished, thinking it both cruel and unjust to cause the innocent suffer with the guilty.

and are followed by multitudes.

They return to *Moscow*.

Prince *Basil* throws himself at the Czar's feet, and pretends innocence; but is banished.

A barbarous custom.

The rebels punished.

*Shoclowitow*, the Colonel, and others who were in the conspiracy, were broke upon

BOOK the wheel. Princess *Sophia*, whose life the

II. Czar spared, was shut up in the the *Devitza Monostira*, or maiden convent, where she was kept under a strong guard during life.

Czar *Peter* takes the sole government upon him, 1691.

Czar *Peter* in the year 1691 took the government on himself, disgraced several who had been engaged with Prince *Basil*, and restored others he had turned out of command, and sent into banishment. (The old *Hettman* was by this time dead in *Siberia*). Then he raised two new regiments of guards, consisting of two thousand men each; one called *Prebrafiatsky*, and the other *Simionosky*; which, together with the two old regiments, *Lamofska* and *Butirsky*, of the like number, made in all eight thousand men. These he quartered in and about the city of *Moscow*, to oppose any new insurrection of the *Strelitzes*; whom he never would trust.

The Czarowich born.

This year the Empress was delivered of a Prince, who was called *Alexis*. The Emperor of *Germany* sent an envoy to the Czar, urging him to continue the war against the *Turks*. The *Turks* offered him advantageous conditions to make up a separate peace; but his Czarish majesty declared that he would not, without the consent of the Emperor, the King of *Poland*, and the states of *Venice*, his allies.

The

The republic of *Poland* had like to have **BOOK**  
 broke off from the alliance, the *Turks* ha- **II.**  
 ving offered to give up to them, *Camincook*,  
 a strong town on the frontiers of *Podolia*,  
 with other forts in the *Polish Ukraine*, if  
 they would make a separate peace; which  
 was opposed by King *John Sobiesky*, in the  
 dyet, otherwise the republic had gone in-  
 to it.

In the month of *March* 1692, an Am-1692.  
 bassador came from *Persia* to the Czar, who  
 caused draw up an army of twenty thousand  
 men, along the front of which the Am-  
 bassador passed as he made his entry.

On the 25th of *October*, the Empress was A second  
 delivered of a second Prince, who was named son born  
*Alexander*; whereupon the Czar caused to Czar,  
 proclaim an eight days feast, making the *Peter*.  
 four regiments of guards often perform  
 their exercises in his presence. There was  
 but little action in the field this year, only  
 General *Scheremetoff* killed and took pri-  
 soners some hundreds of the *Tartars* near  
*Belgorod*.

With the new Emperor of *China*, *Kanchi*,  
 the Czar came to a better understanding  
 than with his father, *Yunsky*, who had used  
 his last envoy very ill: he would neither re-  
 ceive his Czarish majesty's letter, nor pre-  
 sents, because he would not prostrate him-  
 self basely before him, but sent him back  
 with

BOOK with a guard to the frontiers, without communing on the affairs he was sent about.

11. Whereupon, the *Russians* made incursions on the *Chinese* territories, (beating them on most occasions) and built a fort on their frontiers, which the new Emperor besieged with a mighty army; and after having reduced it, used the garrison so well, that he allowed them bag and baggage, cannon, &c. to retire to *Perzinsky*, the capital of *Douria*, causing acquaint the Governor, that he designed to live in good understanding with the Emperor of *Russia*: on this, the Czar impowered the Woywode of that town, to accommodate all differences betwixt the two empires. After which, the Czar in the month of *March* that year, sent a solemn embassy to *China*. The Ambassador was a *German*, whose name was *Ilbrand*; he arrived at *Pekin*, after a tedious and dangerous journey, on the third of *November* the year after, was well received by the governors, on his entering upon the *Chinese* territories, and at the capital by the Emperor himself; so that after having settled all matters in dispute, and concluded a lasting peace, he returned to *Moscow* on the 5th of *January* 1695.

Good understanding with the *Chinese*.

1693. In the year 1693, the Czar, who was never idle, set out for *Archangel*; where, after having caused repair the harbour, he built

built a new fort; diverted himself with the **BOOK** shipping, and returned in the end of the **II.** year to *Moscow*. Next year his imperial majesty visited most of the towns, of any account, three hundred miles round *Moscow*, particularly, *Veronitz*, a great town very convenient for building of ships, situated near the river *Don*, or *Tanais*; which runs close by *Asoph*, navigable all along. At this place did Czar *Peter* project his rendering himself master of *Asoph*, and sending down a fleet of ships and gallies into the *Black-sea*.

*End of the Second Book.*





T H E  
H I S T O R Y  
O F  
P E T E R the G R E A T,  
E M P E R O R of R U S S I A.

---

B O O K III.

THE war against the *Turks* proving hitherto unsuccessful, the Emperor resolves this year (1695); to march in person at the head of an army of an hundred thousand men, besides *Cossacks* and *Cal- mucks*, to besiege *Asoph*; the fortifications whereof were not strong, tho' the garrison consisted of about eight thousand men, besides the inhabitants. The *Turks* were obliged to keep always at this place a considerable body of troops, on account of the neighbourhood of the *Doncossacks*, who inhabit the isles, and both sides of the river, within a few miles of the town. *Asoph* is situated on a rising ground, declining to- wards

Book III.  
The Czar resolves to besiege *Asoph*, 1695.

Descripti- on of *Asoph*.

BOOK wards the *Don*, a league distant from the  
 III. *Palus Meotides*: it was almost square with  
 ~~~~~ small bastions, a tolerable strong earthen  
 wall, with a fosse not exceeding seven fathoms broad; within which is a tolerable strong stone-wall, about two fathoms and a half high; within which again, was another stone-wall, much like the former, wherein was the Governor's house, a mosque, the chancery, &c.

Asoph formerly was a famous place for trade, frequented by the *Venetians*, the *Genoese* and others, but after it fell into the hands of the *Turks*, it became a nest of pirates and robbers. The *Geneose* arms are as yet to be seen on the second stone-wall; which would seem to imply, that it once belonged to that republic. It is said to have been built by *Alexander* the Great, (after that Prince had overthrown the *Scythians*), who gave it the name of *Alexandrette*. The *Russians* had for a long time had an eye to it; and the *Cossacks* in the year 1637 took it by surprize, it being very convenient for exercising their piracies in the *Black-sea*; which obliged the *Turks* to endeavour the recovery of it by any means. They first laid siege to it in the year 1641, but in vain. Next year they marched with a powerful army to besiege it; which the *Cossacks* not being able to withstand, they
 carried

carried off all that was valuable and of use, Book
then laid the town in ashes, after having demo- III.
lished the earthen wall. But, being of such consequence to the *Turks*, it was soon rebuilt, and put in the condition the *Russians* found it this year.


It was about the middle of *June* before the *Russian* army had fully invested the place; where, after having finished the circumvallation and countervallation lines, they first attacked two forts, called *Callan-shaes*, opposite to each other, (the *Don* running betwixt them); which being summoned, and refusing to surrender, the first, which lay in the same side of the river with *Asoph*, Two forts
was taken sword in hand, by a detachment taken.
of the army, commanded by Colonel *James Gordon*, but not without loss: for the *Turks*, not amounting to above twenty men, killed and wounded upwards of two hundred before they were forced. They were all put to the sword, which so terrified those in the opposite fort, that the night following they abandoned it, and retired into the town. In the two forts were found eighteen brass guns, two hundred small arms, with ammunition and provisions in proportion. Against the 10th of *July* the attacks were pretty far advanced; some time after, the besieged made a sally on General *Gordon's* quarter, but were repulsed with the loss of

BOOK twenty men killed and wounded. The

III. night following *Jacaska*, or *Jacob*, a German engineer, deserted to the *Turks*, informed them of the situation of the army, and where the ablest commanders were: he advised them, if they intended any more sallies, to make them on General *Lefort's* quarter, which he believed was but indifferently guarded. Some days after, in consequence of this advice, there marched out of the town a strong body of *Janissaries* (about three thousand), who fell most furiously on General *Lefort's* quarter, killed and wounded near a thousand *Russians*; and, had not General *Gordon* from the right, marched against them with a body of six thousand *Russians*, besides *Cossacks*, *Lefort* had been undone: but to cut off their retreat, he marched in betwixt General *Lefort's* quarter and the town; which the *Turks* observing, retired precipitately with the loss of about two hundred men killed, wounded, and taken.

The treachery of a German engineer.

The Czar being at this time but young, and without experience, had divided his army equally under three independent generals. General *Gordon* was encamped on the right, whose division consisted of above thirty thousand men; General *Lefort* on the left, and General *Golowin* in the centre with like numbers. The three generals carried

carried on different attacks with communi-Book
cations, that they might assist each other the III.
better, in case of any more sallies. Against 
the 29th, the attacks being pretty well, and
equally advanced, the batteries having made
sufficient breaches, and the mines ready to
spring, a general assault was resolved on:
but General *Gordon* having narrowly consid-
ered the mines, and suspecting that they
were not justly directed, made report of it
to the Czar, telling him at the same time,
that he was persuaded they would rather
blow up their own people, than any part of
the enemies works. The Czar had no re-
gard to it, but trusted entirely to Major
Adam Weid's skill, who was director of the
mines: but as the General had told, so it
happened, for near three hundred of the
Czar's own men were blown up, the trench-
es being full of armed men ready for the
assault, which was put off for this time, the
army being like to mutiny, and Major *Weid*
obliged to abscond for some days, till they
were pacified. About the end of *August*
the general assault went on; fifteen thou-
sand men were selected for that end, five
thousand out of each division of the army;
but before they would proceed, they sum-
moned the Governor to surrender, threat-
ning in case of refusal, to put all to the
sword: the Governor was obstinate, so the
attacks

BOOK attacks went on with abundance of resolution, the Czar, and all the three generals present, encouraging the men. Notwithstanding which, the *Turks* repulsed them two different times with exceeding great loss, computed to no less than five thousand men killed and wounded, the enemy at the same time flourishing their colours with a hideous cry, *Alla, alla, Mahommed*; after which, they called out from the walls in the *Russian* language, '*Muscowiter, It is time for you to break up, you have a long march, provisions will be scarce, and consider that September is at hand.*'

The siege
raised.

The Czar was exceedingly galled at the disappointment; but there was no remedy, provisions began actually to fall scarce, and the season being pretty far spent, it was resolved in a council of war, to garrison well the *Callenshaes* and other forts; such as, *Meius*, and *Tagan-Rotz*, which the *Russians* had made themselves masters of during the siege, then to break up with the army, return early in the spring, and pursue the siege more regularly.

The Czar lost in this expedition, (killed and otherways) near twenty thousand men. The army broke up in the beginning of *September*, and suffered much for want of provisions, before they could reach *Nowoscol*, the first frontier place belonging to the Czar,

Czar, about an hundred leagues distant from *Book*
Asoph; where, after having ordered the *III.*
troops to their respective quarters, the Czar, together with the generals, returned to *Mos-*
cow towards the end of *October*.

At *Archangel* this year, on the 28th of *September*, in the night, there blew so strong a wind that several barks, together with some *Dutch* and *English* vessels were much damaged; and on the 30th, the hemp and flax in the market-place took fire, (not known by what accident) which consumed in a trice three thousand bundles of hemp and flax, with two hundred packs of wrought leather, and several thousands of hides: the loss was computed to the amount of two hundred thousand rix-dollars, and it was with difficulty that the gasthoof and all the merchants stores were preserved.

There was also great complaints all over the north of *Russia*, on account of the great rains and coldness of the spring, which seemed to prognosticate a bad crop; but it was incomparably worse in *Sweden*, and over most parts of *Europe*.

The campaign on the *Boristhenes* this year, where General *Sheremetoff* command-
ed, together with the *Hettman*, *Mazepa*,
was pretty successful, they having made
themselves masters of several towns, viz.
Iwan, *Astangorod* and *Singerie*, the *Turks*
not

Success on
the *Borist-*
henes.

BOOK not being able to march an army on this
 III. side, being obliged to employ their greatest
 ~~~~~ strength in *Hungary*, against the Emperor,  
 and on the frontiers of *Podellia* against the  
*Poles*.

Czar John dies. About the end of *January* this year,  
 (1696) died Czar *John*, elder brother to  
 Czar *Peter*, leaving three daughters: *Ga-*  
*tharine*, the eldest, who was married a long  
 time after to the Duke of *Mechlinburgh*:  
*Anna*, the second, who had been married a-  
 bout three months before to the Duke of  
*Courland*, and succeeded *Peter II.* in the  
 Empire: *Proscowia*, the third, died un-  
 married. There was besides these, a fourth  
 daughter, *Mary*, who died young.

Preparati-  
 ons for the  
 siege of  
*Asoph*.

The Czar made timely preparations for  
 the siege of *Asoph*, having sent envoys to  
 the Emperor, to the King of *Poland*, and  
 to the states of *Venice*, acquainting them  
 with the success of last campaign; what  
 forts he had taken in the *Black-sea*, and on  
 the *Boristhenes*; that if he had been pro-  
 vided with abler engineers, gunners and  
 miners, he could have made himself master  
 of *Asoph*. The Emperor, urged him to  
 continue the war for the great benefit of  
 christendom, and for his Czarish majesty's  
 particular advantage and glory; especially,  
 that it would render him master of *Asoph*,  
 so important a place, being the key to the  
*Black-*



*Black-sea.* To facilitate which, his imperial majesty sent him a Colonel of the artillery, *Casimir Won Crage*, two engineers, Baron *Burghderf*, and *de la Wall*, four gunners, and six miners. The elector of *Brandenburgh* sent also two engineers, (*Rose* and *Holsman*) with four gunners. The states of *Holland* sent one *Fonderstam*, (Major of the artillery) with four gunners more.

The Czar considering the inconveniency of the three independent commands last year, resolved in this expedition to appoint a Generalissimo, to have the sole direction of affairs, and to act by council. The boyar, *Alexis Simeonowich Skein* was judged the most proper, as being a man of good sense, and adviseable; and the snow was no sooner gone than the army marched. The Generalissimo, with the cavalry, and greatest part of the infantry marched over land, whilst General *Gordon* with about fifteen thousand foot marched to *Veronitz*; where he embarked in large flat bottomed boats, made for the purpose, together with the artillery, ammunition and provisions for the whole campaign. The Czar, with General *Lefort*, embarked some days after on board of a galley, and arrived much about the same time with General *Gordon* at the *Callenshaes*: the Generalissimo came up with the gross of the army about a week or ten days after.

BOOK III. General *Lefort* was not employed this year in the land-service, but was honoured with the command of the fleet; consisting of twenty-three small gallies, two galleasses, and six cranders; which sailed down the river *Callensko*, to the *Palus Meotides*, to hinder provisions and succours from getting into the town.

The Czar, who had a mighty passion for the sea-service, chanced to be on board the gallies when the *Turkish* fleet appeared, consisting of nine small vessels, seven barks, and thirteen gallies, designed for *Asoph*: these the Czar, about the end of *May*, very successfully attacked. Vice-Admiral *Lima*, a *Venetian*, with sixteen gallies and an hundred large open boats, manned with *Cossacks*, (commanded by their *Hettman*) attacked the enemy; and after a sharp dispute, which continued about two hours, they made themselves masters of two of their ships, twelve barks and gallies; on board of which was an *Aga*, with two hundred and seventy *Janissaries*. The rest of the *Turkish* ships were all stranded, the wind not favouring their getting off. On board the whole fleet, besides what has been already mentioned, was, a considerable quantity of ammunition and provisions, arms for four thousand men, cloathing for the whole garrison, fifty thousand ducats in specie; together with seventy  
brass

The Czar  
destroys  
the *Tur-*  
*kish* fleet.

brass guns ; which success elevated the Czar Book  
not a little. III.

By this time the siege was going on very regularly ; but the Czar considering the great loss of time he had sustained the preceeding year, called a council of war to know the opinion of the generals, about the safest and most expeditious method of becoming master of the place. Most of them delivered their sentiments in the common way, by carrying on attacks, making of great breaches with mines and batteries ; which (they said) would infallibly oblige the Governor to capitulate in the terms of war, or expect the worst. Then General Gordon as the oldest General, gave his opinion, that the safest and most expeditious way to become masters of the town, would be to carry on before them a whole rampart of earth along the front of the town, which as they advanced, would hourly increase ; by having ten or twelve thousand men night and day at work, said he, we shall carry and roll as much earth before us, as will not only be sufficient to fill up the fosse, but will have more over and above than will exceed the height of the town walls ; by which means, in a few weeks we shall oblige the enemy to surrender, or we shall bury them alive. The Czar preferred this opinion, and told them to do as he had proposed ; so to work they

BOOK went with such chearfulness, that within  
 III. the space of five weeks the fosse was actually  
 ~~~~~ full, and the earth above the height of the  
 ramparts rolling in over them; which obliged the Governor to put out the white flag.

Though this seems to be, a very extraordinary and uncommon method of taking towns, yet, here it proved very successful and safe, the loss of men during the siege not amounting to above three hundred.

According to General *Gordon's* plan, there were constantly twelve thousand men at work, who threw the earth from hand to hand, like so many steps of a stair: the greatest danger was at the top, the earth being so loose, especially as they advanced nearer the town, that the enemy's small shot killed and wounded several; for which cause, they were relieved every half hour, the uppermost rank falling down and becoming the lowermost, and so on: there were strong guards kept on the right and left, as also in the rear.

About the 20th of *June*, a body of ten thousand *Turks* and *Tartars*, by break of day, endeavoured to pierce the lines and force their way into the town, but were repulsed with considerable loss, and so closely pursued by the *Russian* cavalry, *Cossacks* and *Callmucks*,

Callmucks, that most of them were cut to pieces. BOOK III.

The only officer of distinction the Czar lost during this siege, was one Colonel *Stevenson*, a *Scots* gentleman: he was shot in the mouth, being a little too curious, and raising himself too high on the top of the loose earth to observe the enemy: he died of hunger the eleventh day after he received the wound, not being able to swallow any kind of nourishment. He was a good officer, and much regreted by the Czar, who caused bury him with all the honours of war.

On the 28th, the Governor demanded to capitulate; but before the Czar would enter into any terms, he demanded that the traitor *Javaska*, who had deserted the year before, should be delivered up to him. The *Turks* made some difficulty at first, but were at last obliged to comply; then the Czar agreed to the surrender on the following conditions. First, that the Governor should give up to him all the christian captives. Secondly, the garrison to be allowed to march out with their arms, but no ammunition, with what baggage they could carry, with their wives and children, and be conducted safe till out of danger. They marched out of the town about six thousand persons, whereof

Asoph surrenders.

BOOK whereof three thousand six hundred were
 III. armed men.

~ The Czar appointed a publick thanksgiving to be made by the whole army, for the success of his arms against the Infidels: then he caused fortify *Asoph* after the modern way, with large royal bastions, together with out-works. On the other side of the *Don* opposite to the town, he also caused erect a large fortification, not much inferior to *Asoph* itself, which he called *Petropolis*, altogether done by engineer *de la Wall*. The other forts on the *Black-sea*, such as *Meau* and *Tagunrog* were enlarged, and fortified under the direction of engineer *Baron Burghderf*. On the east-side of the town the *Cossacks* were assigned a quarter, by way of suburbs, fortified with double pallisadoes, being straitned in the isles of the *Don*, their common place of living.

The Czar about the beginning of *September*, caused the army break up, directing his march for *Moscow*, having left in *Asoph* a garrison of six thousand foot, and four squadrons of horse, provided with all necessaries; and on the 9th of *October* he made his triumphant entry into *Moscow*. The traitor *Javaska* making the greatest part of the show, who was in a few days after broke upon the wheel,

On

On the 2d of *February*, 1697, as his Book
 czarish majesty was diverting himself, in the III.
 company of a great many ladies and officers, and going to sit down to supper, in a house
 he had built in General *Lefort's* name, for A plot a-
 his own diversion; an unknown person came gainst the
 hastily in, and desired to speak a word Czar's life
 with the Czar, who immediately retired into discover-
 another room, where having discoursed with ed, 1697.
 that person, not much above a quarter of an
 hour, he returned to the company, desiring
 them to make merry, for he was called a-
 bout a little business, and would return a-
 gain as soon as he could: he went directly
 accompanied with a few friends, and caused
 three considerable boyars, viz. *Sicler*, *Pou-
 schin* and *Sukownia*, whom he found all
 three together, in the house of the last, to
 be carried to *Preprafinsky*, where they were
 put in irons under a strong guard; after
 which he returned and was merry with the
 company; then telling the story, they were
 all overjoyed as much for the Czar's delive-
 rance as their own.

These three persons designed that night
 to have murdered the Czar and thrown the
 blame upon the foreigners, who were all to
 have been cut to pieces, man, wife and
 child. The method they proposed to take,
 was to set fire to a certain part of the town,
 knowing very well, that upon such occasi-
 ons

BOOK on the Czar himself was commonly the

III. first person to assist at extinguishing the flames:

such fires frequently happen in the city of *Moscow*, most part of the houses being built of timber. Here they had ruffians ready to assassinate the Czar, and then (as is already said) they were to lay the blame on the foreigners, and cut all their throats.

Three boys
suffer
for it.

The next day, being separately examined, they all three owned the fact; for which they were beheaded, then quartered, and their heads, limbs and arms, put upon the most conspicuous places of the town.

It was generally believed that *Pouschin's* lady was the person who advertised the Czar of his danger; for he payed her a visit, and not only gave her thanks, but made her a compliment of her husband's whole estate, and other valuable presents; the estates of the two others were confiscated to the crown. This lady was one of the finest, and most beautiful women in the empire; and had been one of those who had been brought to court when the Czar made his choice: she had always it seems a great esteem for him, and the Czar often wished that he had married her, rather than the person he had preferred to her, being a lady far exceeding her in good humour.

After all this good success, both at home and abroad, the Czar resolved to travel to
the

the most considerable courts in Europe, that he might see the manners and customs of foreigners; for which end, he proposed the sending of a splendid embassy, in whose company he was to travel himself incognito. The ambassadors were, General *Lefort*, the boyar *Theodore Alexowich Golovin*, and *Proroph Boydanowich Wolnitzkin*; this last had been often employed in foreign affairs.

This embassy set out from *Moscow* about the middle of *April*, and arrived at *Koningsberg*, in the *Ducal Prussia*, *May 7th*; where, the elector of *Brandenburgh*, knowing of the Czar's being with the embassy, came himself in person, and received him in great state. During their stay there, the Czar had several conferences with his electoral highness, who omitted nothing that could contribute to his diversion; such as, hunting, comedies, balls, and fire-works; which he understood the Czar liked.


The Czar
sets out on
his travels.

But in their passage through the King of *Sweden's* dominions, particularly at *Riga*, the Czar being curious to view the fortifications, was stopped by the centinels, and not allowed to go upon the ramparts; which was taken amiss, and said to be given for the pretext of the ensuing war betwixt *Russia* and *Sweden*.

On the 8th of *July*, the embassy departed from *Koningsberg*, pursuing their rout

BOOK through *Pomerania* to *Collberg*; thence
 III. through *Cavenburgh*: over all the elector's
 dominions their charges were defrayed.
 In *Nymark*, the Czar viewed the fortifications of *Custrin*, without hindrance. On the 20th, he passed through *Berlin*, the residence of his electoral highness; thence forward, until he arrived at *Copenburgh* in the electorate of *Brunswick*, where he was magnificently received by the Duke of *Zell*. In the beginning of *August* the embassy arrived at *Amsterdam*, where the Czar continued for some time, looking narrowly into every thing, particularly the shipping; and he did not think it unworthy of him to work with his own hands as a ship-carpenter till the end of *September*, then went to *Utrecht*, where he had a conference with King *William*.

Notwithstanding the Czar's absence from his dominions, the war was carried on pretty successfully against the *Turks*: the boyar *Alexis Simeonowich Shein*, being left Generalissimo, (but with express orders from the Czar, not to undertake any thing of moment without General *Gordon's* advice) marched to *Asoph* with an army of seventy thousand *Russians*, besides *Cossacks* and *Callmucks*, in order to complete the fortifications, and to oppose the enemy as occasion offered.

On the 3d of *June*, a body of *Tartars* Book
 came up early in the morning, in view of III.
 the *Russian* camp, after having forced the 
 foragers, and the party that covered them, to
 retire; whereupon, a battallion of foot,
 with two squadrons of horse, and two field-
 pieces, together with the *Cossacks* and *Cal-*
mucks under the command of Lieut. Colonel
Alexander Gordon, were ordered out against
 them. The *Tartars* were forced to retreat;
 the *Cossacks* and *Calmucks* pursuing them,
 killed a few of them, and took six prisoners.
 The enemy appeared no more, for such
 measures were taken, that every morning
 before break of day, strong parties of horse
 were commanded out to scour the fields
 some leagues round the camp.

On the 14th of *August*, an express arri- The Turks
 ved from the governor of *Tavan* to the Ge- lay siege
 neralissimo, with advice, that the *Turks* to Tavan,
 were advancing with a body of twelve thou- and aban-
 sand foot, besides *Tartars*, to attack the don it.
 place; whereupon General *Gordon* was or-
 dered to march to its relief, with a body of
 twenty thousand foot, four thousand horse,
 and a strong patty of *Cossacks* and *Calmucks*;
 and having advanced by long marches, and
 got within sight of the place; the *Turks* in
 a hurry abandoned the siege, leaving their
 cannon, ammunition and provisions. The
 General, after having repaired the fortifica-

BOOK tions of the town, and levelled the approaches, returned to *Moscow* about the end of *October*.

At *Vienna*, this year, a triple alliance was confirmed, betwixt the Emperor, the Czar, and the states of *Venice*; that they should carry on the war vigorously both by sea and land against the *Turks*; and that none of them should make peace without the other. King *John Sobiesky* dying in the month of *June*, the preceeding year, the *Poles* were so divided in the choice of a successor, that they had no considerable army in the field this year.

In the beginning of the year 1698, King *William* sent one of his yachts with three men of war, to transport the Czar and the embassy into *England*: he arrived at *London* the 11th of *January*, where a lodging was prepared for him in *York* buildings, which the Czar did not like, but in a few days retired from thence to *Deptford*, that he might the better observe the shipping. The Marquis of *Carmarthen* and Sir *Anthony Dean*, were the two persons, in whose company he delighted most; the Marquis being an Admiral, and Sir *Anthony* one of the ablest masters in *England* for ship-building. The Czar during his stay had several conferences with King *William*; saw all that was worth seeing in and about *London*; took particular

The Czar
in Eng-
land,
1698.

cular notice of the fleet at *Spithead*, and Book III. liked much better the *English* build of their men of war than the *Dutch*. King *William* amongst other presents complimented him with a yacht and the whole crew. On the 28th of *April*, the Czar took leave of him at *Kensington*, dined at *Lambeth* with the Archbishop of *Canterbury*, and on the 3d of *May*, was sumptuously entertained by the Duke of *Leeds*, at his house near the *Thames*; then went on board the yacht for *Holland*, under the convoy of two men of war commanded by Admiral *Mitchel*. The Czar carried over with him a considerable number of persons of all trades, especially ship-carpenters, and those who had any knowledge of shipping; amongst others, a son of Sir *Anthony Dean's*; also Mr. *Farquharson* (an able mathematician) a *Scots* highlander. All these on his landing at *Holland*, he sent on board the *Russian* fleet designed for *Archangel*. Some time before the Czar left *Holland*, the *Russian* merchants came to pay their respects, and made him a present of twenty thousand dollars, which he frankly accepted, and gave them in return his hand to kifs. The day after, the Czar, accompanied with some of his *Dutch* acquaintances, went out to take the air in a pleasure-boat towards *Harderweck*: on his return (it being late) there arose such a hard gale

Returns to
Holland,
and carries
over several
English trades-
men.

BOOK gale of wind, that they had like to have
 III. perished. In the time of the greatest dan-
 ger, the Czar was so little concerned, that
 he desired them not to be afraid; for
 it had never been heard, that a Czar of
Russia had been lost at sea. On the 15th
 of *May*, he left *Holland*, pursuing his
 journey into *Germany* through *Gleves*, and
 arrived on the 1st of *June* at *Dresden*. Here,
 after he had refreshed himself, he went to
 see the chamber of rarities, attended by the
 Count *Wonlek*; after which, he saw all that
 was worth notice in the town; next day he
 made a visit to the Queen of *Poland*, as also
 the Electress dowager; then he was invited
 to the Stadtholder, *Wonsurstembergh's*; where
 all the gentlemen and ladies of the court
 accompanied him; and at the drinking of
 each health, a round of guns were fired.

The Czar
 in great
 danger.

Visits the
 Queen of
 Poland.

On the 3d of *June*, he went to see the
 impregnable castle of *Kenningstein*; where
 some years after, his ambassador, General
Patcul, was by King *Augustus's* order de-
 livered up to the King of *Sweden*, who
 caused put him cruelly to death. From
Dresden, he pursued his journey through
Bohemia, directly for *Vienna*; where he ar-
 rived the 16th, and was conducted to Count
Keningseck's palace, which was prepared for
 him. The Emperor and the Czar met for
 the first time, at nine o'clock at night in the
 favorita;

favorita ; where he was attended by all the Book
 ministry, and persons of distinction, in splen- III.
 did equipages. The two emperors at meet-
 ing embraced each other, and after some
 few compliments parted: but on the 28th, He pays a
 he had a long conference with the Empe- visit to the
 ror ; where they both remained uncovered, Emperor.
 none being present but the two counts,
Walenstein and *Dicktrichstein*, with General
Lefort, who served as interpreter.

The Emperor, to put the greater respect
 upon the Czar, caused make a sumptuous,
 and extraordinary entertainment for him up-
 on *St. Peter's* day ; to which there were in-
 vited above three hundred persons of the
 first quality ; whereof, forty couple (a lady
 and a cavalier) sat at the same table with the
 Czar, dressed after the manner of the boors of
 all the nations they could think of ; the Em-
 peror and Empress acting the part of landlord
 and landlady. They were attended by Prince
Eugene of Savoy, and several ministers and ge-
 neral officers, who served at the table and
 carried about the glass. Some time after the
 company were set, the Emperor brought a
 glass to the *Frieslandish* boor, who was the
 Czar, and drank it off to the health of his
 Czarish majesty, saying, he was persuaded
 that he was well known to him. The Czar,
 after giving his imperial majesty thanks,
 told him, that he knew the Czar so very
 well,


BOOK well, that he could undertake for him he

III. was a sincere friend and humble servant of his imperial majesty's, and an enemy to all his enemies; then took off the glass, which went round: a little after, the *Frieslandish* boor called for another glass, and brought it to the *Egyptian* boor, who was the King of the *Romans*, saying, your majesty is as yet young, and can carry a glass better than the Emperor your father, therefore I bring you a health to the prosperity of the house of *Austria*; which went also round. The entertainment continued till past midnight, when the company parted.

Leaves
Vienna
suddenly.

Next day, the Czar had accounts sent him by an extraordinary courier, of the revolt of the *Strelitzes*, which obliged him to make all haste to his own country. So, after having seen all that was remarkable at *Vienna*, he took leave of the Emperor on the 29th of *July*, and set out post for *Poland*. On the 11th of *August*, he met privately with King *Augustus* at *Reva*, a small town, not far distant from *Limberg*, and viewed there the *Saxon* troops that were encamped near that place. The 13th, the Czar continued his journey towards *Russia*, attended by his *Polish* majesty, and four squadrons of his guards, the length of the frontiers, where they parted. The King sent Major-General *Carlowich* alongst with the Czar, in quality of

of envoy, without the character: he arrived **BOOK**
safe at his capital the 4th of *September*. III.

Mr. *Patcull* was in company, disguised in the habit of a groom, having reason for keeping himself private.  **Ar. es at Moscow.**

The Emperor sent an extraordinary envoy, Baron *Wonquarient*, to ratify the late three years alliance, who had made his publick entry into *Moscow*. before the Czar's arrival.

The dangerous rebellion, which occasioned the Czar's return to his dominions sooner than he intended, (for he designed to have visited *Italy*, and particularly *Venice*) happened thus:

After the death of King *John Sobiesky*, **The second revolt of the Strelitzes.** the republic of *Poland* was divided into two parties; one chose the elector of *Saxony*, the other declared for the Prince of *Conti*; who came too late, for before he landed at *Dantzick*, the elector was proclaimed King, by the name of *Frederick Augustus II.* so that the Prince of *Conti* was obliged to return to *France*; his party, whereof the Cardinal primate was head, dropping his interest. The Czar during these commotions, sent a considerable body of troops to the frontiers of *Lithuania*, under the command of Prince *Michael Gregorowich Romodanosky*, to be at hand to assist the elector's party in case of need. These troops
VOL. I. Q being

BOOK being mostly *Strelitzes*, took occasion of
 III. the Czar's absence, being encouraged there-
 ~~~~~ to by the Princess *Sophia* and her adherents,  
 to march straight to *Moscow*, where few or  
 no troops were to oppose them, and where  
 they hoped to be joined by hundreds of  
 thousands. They left the army, and directed  
 their march towards *Moscow*, without say-  
 ing a word to their General, (about eight  
 thousand of them) giving out every where  
 that the Czar was dead abroad, and for that  
 reason, it behoved them to march to the ca-  
 pital, to chuse a Regent to manage matters  
 during the young Czar *Alexis Petrowich's*  
 minority: they turned off all their officers,  
 and created new ones from among them-  
 selves, and were joined in their march by  
 several loose people, who were fond of a  
 change, imagining no doubt, that they  
 would find their account in it.

Prince *Romodanofsky* their General, sent  
 couriers one after another, acquainting the  
 regency that a great part of his army had  
 left him, and certainly on no good design;  
 that they had marched the first day more  
 than thirty wersts; that the troops he had  
 still with him, were most of them in the  
 same mind; nor durst he adventure to fol-  
 low after them, having express orders from  
 the Czar to continue on the frontiers of  
*Poland*, and obey what orders he should re-  
 ceive

ceive from King *Augustus*; to whom he had also sent an express, acquainting him with what had happened; that the *Strelitzes* who remained in the army, seemed to be much more elevated than ordinary, shewing but little regard to orders; so that he feared the worst. BOOK III.

This revolt put all the boyars and grantees at *Moscow* in the utmost consternation; and had not the Czar expressly ordered General *Gordon*, together with four thousand of his guards, to continue at the capital this year, the government had been overturned, and the Czar with his family quite extirpated.

The rebels were got within one hundred wersts of *Moscow*, before it was possible for General *Gordon* to make head against them. But having, with great difficulty, got the Generalissimo perswaded to march out of the capital, at the head of four thousand of the neighbouring gentry, he marched along with a body of three thousand foot, and good artillery, consisting of twenty-seven field pieces, from six to ten pounders; being obliged to leave one thousand foot to keep matters right at *Moscow*, and to guard the palace. General *Gordon* moving forwards, a good way before his little army, got sight of the rebels, near a monastery, called the *Woskresensky* or the *Resurrection*, distant

Q 2

from

BOOK from *Moscow* forty wersts; into which

III. place, he ordered a Major with two hundred foot and a few horse, to prevent the rebels from taking possession thereof: the monastery being large, and surrounded with a good iron wall. After which, accompanied with ten or twelve persons, he moved up slowly towards them, and sent an Adjutant, desiring some of their leaders to come and speak with him, which they agreed to, knowing him very well: and when they came, he saluted them in a very complaisant manner, asking how they did, and where they were going; how they came to leave the army, and by whose orders? They answered him most submissively, that they had left the army without orders: that having been long absent from their homes, they intended to go and see their wives, and put their household affairs in order. The General told them, they could not but know, that they had transgressed against his majesty's orders; therefore, he advised them, as a friend, to return instantly to their duty; which, if they did, he assured them of his Czarish majesty's pardon: that if they did not, but continued to persist in their rebellion, they would shut all the gates of mercy; and could expect nothing but death and destruction. They told him plainly, that since they were come  
so

so far, they would first go to *Moscow*, and Book then advise: he expostulated with them farther, but to no purpose. Then he asked them how far they intended to march that day? they told him not far. He said, it being then towards evening, he thought it adviseable for them, to pitch their tents a little below, where there was a village that could accomodate them with necessaries, and consider with their friends against next morning, when he should meet with them once more, and reason farther on the matter. They told him, they should do so: and actually, being fatigued with long marches, they drew up, and encamped on the same spot of ground the General had pointed out to them. After which, he bid them good night, and returned to meet the troops, who were not then in sight, marching up slowly with the artillery and ammunition. He encamped about a mile distant from the rebels, where he made every thing ready for the next day; perceiving plainly, that the *Strelitzes* must have encouragement from higher hands, or they durst never have undertaken so bold an enterprize with so small numbers.

The Generalissimo, together with the rest of the nobility and gentry, were in the greatest terror imaginable: the General told them not to be uneasy, for he was not without

BOOK without hopes of getting them persuaded to

III. return to their duty; and that even in case  
of the worst, he hoped to give a good account of them.

By break of day next morning, the General (who had rested little or none that night, and fearing lest the rebels should seduce and corrupt any of his troops, had caused the officers patrol the whole night long) mounted his horse, and went out to commune with them as he had promised; and when some of their leaders came up to him, he asked them what they had resolved upon? said, he hoped they would be so wise as follow his advice, who was really their friend: they told him, they neither had nor would alter their resolution, but were determined (seeing they were so near) to visit their wives. If that was all, he told them their wives should be sent to them. They told him, that there was no use for that, since besides seeing their wives, they had all of them affairs of their own to look after, which they would put an end to before they could think of returning. Then he assured them in positive terms, that the Generalissimo was at hand with a powerful army, ready to fall on them and cut them to pieces; but, if they would yet return to their duty, he promised them still his majesty's most gracious pardon. The rebels interrupting him,

him, told that they would go to *Moscow*, and were not at all in pain about the Generalissimo and his army. But he out of real pity insisting, said, he was sorry for them, for he saw plainly that in a few minutes they must be destroyed. They told him at last, to mind his own business; and some of them were so bold as to present their pieces to fire at him. Then he thought it time for him to march off, and putting spurs to his horse, rode up to the Generalissimo, told him, that these unhappy people were infatuated, and would not hearken to reason, so that there was no more time to be lost. It is certain, that if the rebels had killed General *Gordon* on this occasion, (which they might have done without any difficulty) they would have carried their point, for there was none other who had the resolution to oppose them. All the foreign officers were in the army employed against the *Turks*; but providence, who watched over this great Prince from his infancy to the hour of his death, shewed itself here in a particular manner. The General then causing march up the infantry hard upon the rebels, ordered the Colonel of the artillery to direct the guns so as not to do great execution amongst them, out of pure compassion, thinking thereby to intimidate them; but it had the contrary effect,

BOOK  
III.

BOOK sect, for finding so few of their people kill-

III. ed and wounded, they took courage, the priests crying out, a miracle! a miracle! they beat their drums, flourished their colours, and crossed themselves, as if they had been going to engage the *Turks*. Whereupon, the General ordered the guns to be well directed, and to fire close upon them with the whole artillery. This second fire had its effect, killed and wounded many, which put them into confusion. The third fire of the artillery put them in the utmost disorder. Whereupon, the General broke in upon them with the infantry, cutting them to pieces, without further regard; so that at last, finding themselves overpowered, and all like to be destroyed; they threw down their arms, and begged for mercy.

The rebels surrender.

The horse, though of no use in the engagement, took a great many prisoners; so that the rebels, being all foot, not one single person escaped. The Generalissimo, with the rest of the nobility and gentry, were for cutting them all to pieces on the spot. But General *Gordon* advised, that they might be all reserved till his majesty's return; that the ground of this rebellion might be the better dived into: which advice prevailing, they were all fettered two and two, and sent to different prisons, to the number of four thousand six



six hundred, besides wounded. General-Book  
 issimo *Shein*, causing some of their leaders III.  
 to be brought before him, asked them, <sup>~</sup> what they meant by this revolt, and what <sup>Their motives for</sup> they intended thereby? Some of the most <sup>rebellion.</sup> forward told him, without disguise; that seeing the Czar had abandoned his country, and being informed, that he was dead, they were designed to march to the city of *Moscow*, and put the government into some sure persons hands to manage matters, until the young Czar, *Alexis*, should be of age. This was all he could get out of them; though he had caused put several of them to the torture. The rest being reserved to the Czar's pleasure, who, as is already said, arrived at his capital the 4th of *September*; where, after being welcomed by many of his faithful subjects, he rested a few days, after so long and so fatiguing a journey.

The first thing he did, was, to cause the <sup>The ring-</sup> ring-leaders of the revolt to be transported <sup>leaders</sup> to *Prebráfsinsky*, where they were tortured, <sup>punished.</sup> and examined in his presence; yet nothing farther could be got from them, nor would they accuse any of the great ones, as having a concern in this rebellion, till at last, a youth not full eighteen years of age, desired to be carried into the Czar's presence, and being admitted, told that he was only a  
 VOL. I. R servant

BOOK servant to one of the leading men amongst

III. the *Strelitzes*, called *Affonacy*, but, he  
 ~~~~~ thought, he could bring to light a great deal  
 of this affair; that he could make a correspondence appear, betwixt the Princess *Sophia* and his master, by the means of an old woman, who lived by the charity of the cloisters; that he had often seen her carry in and out of the convent loaves of bread, wherein were letters inclosed, which he had seen his master take out of the loaves, read them, and return answers after the same manner: tho' this appeared to be fact, by the confession of the poor old woman herself, who did not deny, but she had often carried loaves of bread out, and in to the cloister; but said, she did not know of any letters being in them: yet the young man's master, *Affonacy*, would never acknowledge any such thing, but went obstinately to death; as almost all of them did; for none above the age of eighteen were pardoned.

Several of the great men, whom the Czar suspected to have been engaged in this conspiracy, he caused take the axe into their hands, and obliged them to cut off the heads of some others of the conspirators: and to mortify still more his sister, princess *Sophia*; he caused set up a gallows, opposite to the windows of her apartments, whereon,
 he

he caused hang three *Strelitzes*, holding up Book
to her petitions in their hands. III.

The imperial envoy, Baron *Wonquarient*,
on the 13th, was admitted to his first audi-
ence, and on the 17th, was entertained
sumptuously by his Czarish majesty; as
were likewise, the envoys, from *Poland* and
Denmark.

The war against the *Turks* went very The
prosperously on this year: the boyar *Subli-* Czar's suc-
cow, Governor of *Asoph*, having an army cess against
of forty thousand *Russians*, besides *Cossacks* the *Turks*.
and *Calmucks* under his command, beat the
Tartars in several encounters.

Likewise, Prince *James Dolgoruky*, Go-
vernor of *Belogrod*, marched at the head of
sixty thousand *Russians*, with the like num-
ber of *Cossacks*, commanded by their *Hett-*
man, *Mazepa*, on the 17th of *July*, and
forced the *Siraskier Bassa* to retire over the
bog, and encamp himself under the cannon
of *Oczakow*.

End of the Second Book.

T H E
H I S T O R Y
O F
P E T E R the G R E A T,
E M P E R O R of R U S S I A.

B O O K IV.

I N the year 1699, the *Turks* desiring a peace, a treaty went on with the Emperor, the Czar, the crown of *Poland*, and the states of *Venice*,^d which ended, the beginning of the ensuing year, in a thirty years truce. The Czar kept *Asoph*, together with all the forts he had taken on the *Black-sea*, but was obliged to restore the towns and forts he had taken on the *Boristhenes*, all prisoners being released on both sides.

On the 2d of *March* died General *Francis Lefort*, aged about forty-six. The Czar was then at *Veronitz*, and though much taken up with his shipping, he returned to *Moscow*,

BOOK
IV.


A truce
with the
Turks,
1699.

Lefort
dies,

BOOK *Moscow*, and gave him a magnificent burial.

~~~~~  
 His cha- He was a citizen's son of *Geneva*, whose  
 racter, &c. brother was one of the *Syndicks* of that place:  
 he was bred a merchant, but being of a spirit  
 above his fortune, he soon spent the stock  
 his parents had left him; then went to  
*Moscow*, and entered into the army in Czar  
*Peter's* minority. He was a tall well-look-  
 ed man, of a facetious engaging temper, and  
 found means to get credit among the *Dutch*,  
 and other foreign merchants, who furnished  
 him wherewithal to live at a pretty high rate.  
 At last, he fell in courtship with an agree-  
 able young lady, the only child of a rich  
 widow, who by no means would consent  
 to the marriage; but, the young lady taking  
 a fancy to him, they married without her  
 consent: yet, she had so great a liking to  
 her daughter, that she soon pardoned her,  
 and received them both into her own house.  
 The mother was after the manner of that  
 country esteemed rich, having betwixt four  
 and five thousand rubles on interest, besides  
 a very good house; so that Captain *Lefort*,  
 her son-in-law, wheedled the good old lady  
 from time to time out of three hundred  
 rubles; which enabled him to support a  
 grandeur he always aimed at.

He soon came to understand the *Russian*  
 language, and by one means or other, to be  
 introduced

introduced into Czar *Peter's* company, BOOK  
who took such a liking to him, that from a IV.  
Captain, within the space of a few years,   
he raised him to the rank of a General: he  
understood little or nothing of the military  
art, either by sea or land, but favour supplied  
all: he became Czar *Peter's* principal  
favourite, was a man given up to all man-  
ner of pleasures, and could bear a glass well.  
He, together with a man of quality, *viz.*  
*Theodore Theodorowich Pleskeow*, were be-  
lieved to have been ill instruments in occasi-  
oning the Czar's alienating his affections  
from his Empress, by following his plea-  
sures amongst the beauties of the town; one  
whereof, called *Anna Ivarouna Mons*, a  
wine merchant's daughter, of *Livonian* ex-  
traction, exceeding beautiful and taking,  
was greatly favoured by Czar *Peter*. And  
here it may be taken notice of, that the  
Empress dowager being still alive, and  
mightily concerned at her son's way of li-  
ving, not only took occasion of speaking to  
him herself, but engaged likewise the Em-  
press-consort to deal with him, and endea-  
vour all she could to retain him, by persuad-  
ing him to live after the manner of his  
predecessors, in greater majesty; for besides  
the scandal and novelty of the thing, they  
were apprehensive of accidents; which ad-  
vice offended the Czar to that degree, that  
he

BOOK he laid his commands on her, never to take

IV. any concern about him, nor to presume to offer him advice in any one single point of his affairs, or conduct, under pain of his displeasure: but this had no effect. The old Empress still pushed on the young Empress, till at last, the Czar to be free of her importunity, abandoned her entirely: about which time, the Empress dowager happening to die, the Czar put his consort into a monastery, where she continued without taking the vows, till after his death, and till her grandson came to the throne.

To return to General *Lefort*, he maintained himself in favour to the last, and never (except in what is already said) abused it, nor so far as I can learn, did he ever use it to the prejudice of any. His irregular way of living shortened his days, for he never could be without company. Their entertainments would many times have continued for three days and nights without going to bed; each took a nap in the corner as he could come at it, the glass and dance still succeeding. The ladies had their apartments, where they relieved one another, as the watch does on board a ship, every four hours. He died of a violent fever. For several years of the latter part of his life, he had not kept company with his lady; but designed, if he had lived any time longer,



longer, to have put her likewise into a monastery, after the royal example. BOOK IV.

On the 30th of *November* this year, died also General *Patrick Gordon*, at seven o'clock in the morning, in the sixty-sixth year of his age, much regreted by the Czar and the whole nation. His majesty visited him five times during his illness, was present the moment he expired, and shut his eyes with his own hand: he was also buried in great state. General Gordon dies.

He was son to *John Gordon*, Esq; of *Achleuchries*, in the county of *Aberdeen*, whose grandfather was a son of the family of *Haddo*, now earls of *Aberdeen*. He left *Scotland* at the age of eighteen, and went into the *Swedish* service. *Charles X.* then King of *Sweden*, had wars with *Poland*. At the battle of *Warsaw*, Captain *Gordon* was taken prisoner, and not relieved till the peace was concluded, there being no cartel betwixt the two crowns for exchange of prisoners. On the peace, he engaged with the Ambassador of *Russia* to enter into that service, persuaded thereto by one General *Won Buckhowen*, a *German*, who had served King *Charles II.* After the restoration, the King having no more use for generals, recommended *Buckhowen* to the *Russian* Emperor, *Alexis Michaelowich*, then at war with the *Turks*: and, he becoming acquaint-

BOOK ed at *Warsaw* with *Gordon*, they went together

IV. into the *Russian* service; where Captain

~~~~ *Gordon* was made Major; then Lieutenant-colonel; and in two years after, Colonel: and so passed through all the degrees, till he came to be commanding General. He married (whilst Lieutenant-colonel) General *Buckhowen's* daughter, whose mother was of the family of *Vaughan* in *Wales*. General *Gordon* was a sober man, in a country where drinking is much in fashion; and though he used to be much in the Czar's company, his majesty knowing his inclinations, would never allow him to be urged. He was ever mindful of his business, and did great service to the *Russian* nation.

1700. In the year 1700, the 28th of *February*, Mr. *Wrenhulst*, envoy from the States-general, made his publick entry, and had his first audience the 23d of *March*; the Czar putting great respect on him, to shew the regard he had for that republic.

Czar *Peter*, as he returned through *Poland* to his own dominions, as is already said, had several private conferences with King *Augustus*; where they concerted, and laid down the plan (together with the King of *Denmark*) of the approaching war against *Sweden*. The truce with the *Porte*, was no sooner ratified and published, than he caused make all necessary preparations

tions: and as he had no liking to his old Book standing army, the *Strelitzes*; but on the IV. contrary, a very great aversion (and most deservedly), on the very day of the rejoicing for the truce, the Czar broke that formidable body of people, to the number of thirty thousand, and above; commanding them to be instantly dispersed over the whole empire; that from a certain day, three of them should not be seen in any one place together, under pain of death, and never more to be admitted into his imperial majesty's service; nay, the very name of *Strelitzes* to be abolished.

The *Strelitzes* broke,

Immediately, he raised an army of forty thousand foot, to be called soldiers, and twenty thousand dragoons: it was surprising to behold how soon this army was made up, for in less than three months time, they were enrolled, clothed, armed, and ready to march.

The method the Czar fell upon to raise this army was curious. The great ones, nobility, gentry, and generally all people of fortune, had always about them, numbers of bought servants, who continued in their families, from generation to generation; whom their masters, for the most part, treated with the utmost severity: all which servants, without exception, the

BOOK Czar declared free, on condition of their
 IV. entering into his service, but not otherways.

~~~~~ The novelty and unexpectedness of the thing, with the natural desire that people have for liberty, made these slaves at once abandon their old cruel masters, and come by thousands to enlist themselves into his majesty's service. The foreign colonels got each of them two hundred of these new levied men to discipline and exercise.

A new army raised and modelled.

Colonel *Alexander Gordon*, who was at due pains (as most of the others were) had, in less than three weeks time, his men so well trained, that when the Czar went to see them perform their exercise, he owned that his guards could not do better. Upon which he got a thousand men more, which made his regiment twelve-hundred compleat; of which force, all the Czar's regiments consist, both foot and dragoons; as for horse, he never cared for having any; scarcely thinking them of any use.

Some days after, the said Colonel received orders to march to *Tevere*, a considerable town, about an hundred and fifty miles distant from *Moscow*, on the way to *Novogrod*, there to remain and discipline his men till farther orders.

The Czar, after having modelled his army according to the *German* method; set about

about reforming his whole empire, not only in their dress and ways of living, but also in their judicatures and police: he established magistrates in all the towns and burghs; granting them the same power and jurisdiction with those of other *European* nations. This diminished the power of the woywodes and governors. He also set up academies and colleges to propagate learning and knowledge: besides which, he sent young gentlemen of the best families into foreign armies and fleets for their education; where they were obliged to continue seven years (until they were perfect), on their own, and their parents charges; and those who were not able, he furnished out of the treasury. On their return, they were employed according to their capacities, either in the land or sea-service; and those who had no inclination for either, were employed in the police. With these views, they returned home, most of them well bred gentlemen, speaking most languages.

Then he ordered, that all men, of whatever degree, should take off their beards, and, that both men and women should dress after the *British, French, or German* fashion, and never appear in public in the *Russian* habit, under the penalty of one hundred rubles for every offence; the *Cossacks, Calmucks, and Tartars* excepted.

After

BOOK  
IV.

The Czar  
sets upon  
reforming  
his coun-  
try.

BOOK After this, he ordered freedom of con-

IV. versation and access to the ladies, who were  
 ~~~~~ all formerly so close confined, that their  
 nearest relations were not allowed to see
 them, but in the presence of the husband;
 and that only on extraordinary occasions:
 and for promoting this liberty, he appointed
 plays, and assemblies with music, dancing,
 and other polite diversions. The
 married ladies, as well as the maids, were
 very soon reconciled to this reformation;
 and to say the truth, by this means, a barbarous
 custom was removed; which was, that when a
 young gentleman had a mind to marry, the match
 was always made up betwixt the parents; the young
 couple never coming to see one another until the
 wedding-night: so that the bride might be blind
 or lame, and sometimes both, without the bridegroom's
 knowing it. I have known some examples of this
 kind which rendered many of their marriages very
 unhappy.

Introduces
 polite
 conversation.

The Czar thought this cruel; therefore would have the parties see and converse together, that they might please themselves, after the manner of the nations through which he had travelled.

The old people were much mortified with these novelties, but there was no remedy; those who appeared most averse, were

were sure to be called, and obliged to at-
tend on such occasions, so that nothing ex-
cused them but sickness; and if that was
found to be pretended, they were severely
fined, according to their quality and abi-
lity.

Book IV.
These in-
novations
not relish-
ed by the
old peo-
ple,

The ladies at first looked but awkwardly
in their new dress, especially when laced,
being used to wear loose gowns down to
their heels; but in a little time, the change
becoming habitual, did very well.

In a few years, the nation became quite
metamorphosed, much to the taste of all the
young people; then foreigners intermarried
with the natives, of which the Czar him-
self gave the example, marrying, first, his son,
the Czarowich, to a princess of *Wolfenbutle*;
next, his nieces, *Anna*, the late Empress, to
the Duke of *Courland*, and her eldest sister,
Catharine, to the Duke of *Mechlenburgh*,
without regard to different opinions in reli-
gion. At the same time he introduced
trades and manufactories. Tolerably good
linen-cloth had long before been made a-
mongst them, but at present they are come
a great length in their woolen manufactures;
they make cloth of all colours pretty fine;
the country over all, producing plenty of
wool. They are now supplied with a great
many commodities, which they were for-
merly obliged to other countries for.

but have
a good ef-
fect.

On

BOOK On the 1st of *September*, war was proclaimed against *Sweden*; the Czar designing to march in person at the head of twenty-eight regiments of foot, including the guards, together with six thousand horse-militia from the provinces of *Novogrod* and *Pleskow*, (his new levied dragoons not being as yet ready) with an artillery of thirty-two battering pieces and twenty-four mortars.

War proclaimed against Sweden.

Troops march to invest Narva.

On the 2d, Colonel *Gordon* received orders to march with all expedition to *Novogrod*, and to take farther orders there from Major-general *James Bruce*; who being slow in his march, the Czar, who loved expedition, was so offended, that he caused put the Major-general in arrest, and gave the command of four regiments of infantry, and two of the horse-militia, to Prince *John Irlubetskoy*, governor of *Novogrod*, with orders to march straight forward to *Narva*, and post himself so, as to hinder all succours and provisions from getting into the town.

On the 12th, Prince *Irlubetskoy*, after an expeditious march, encamped on the east-side of the river *Narva*, within a short league of the town, betwixt it and the mouth of the river; and as he marched by *Ivanogrod*, a party of *Swedish* horse attacked the van-guard of the *Russians*, but were repulsed

pulsed with the loss of some few men killed, and one taken prisoner by the *Russian* cavalry, bad as they then were. BOOK IV.

On the 13th, Colonel *Gordon* with his regiment, together, with a battallion of foot and four squadrons of horse, crossed the river in large boats, (which the enemy it seems had not time to destroy) marched up, before sun-set, and posted himself within cannon-shot of the town, in the middle, as near as he could judge, betwixt the river and the town, where he immediately intrenched; so that before break of day, the cannon from the place could not hurt him much.

On the 14th, in the afternoon, a strong party of foot and horse, came marching out of the garrison, with design to attack the *Russians*. Colonel *Gordon* no sooner perceived it, than he marched with a sufficient body against them, and forced them to retire to the town, with the loss of nine men killed, and four wounded and taken prisoners. The *Russians* lost Prince *Gregory*, a captain of horse, with fifteen more killed and wounded. During this affair, captain *Bower*, who had been detained prisoner at large, in *Narva*, came galloping over to the *Russians*, making a sign, by waving a handkerchief; and as he came up, declared that he belonged to King *Augustus*.

A party from the garrison attack the Author's command.

BOOK *Augustus*, and had been sent by him into
 IV. *Riga*, some time before the *Saxons* had invested that place, on private business: but the *Swedes* not caring to trust such people, sent him under a guard to *Narva*, where he was for a long time little trusted: but at last, being allowed to march out with this party, he took the opportunity during the fire, and came over to the *Russians*, where he was not altogether trusted neither, until Lieutenant-general *Allart* came to the *Russian* camp.

On the 15th, Prince *Irubetskoy* marched up with the rest of the body and joined Colonel *Gordon*, and without loss of time, they fell to work at their circumvallation and countervallation lines, which were completed with redoubts, at two hundred fathoms distance, against the first of *October*.

On the 17th, Lieutenant-general *Allart*, an able engineer, arrived at the *Russian* camp before *Narva*, being sent by King *Augustus*, as a proper person, to have the direction of the siege: and, upon his declaring, that captain *Bower* had been employed by that King, to give him information of the state of affairs at *Riga*, *Bower* came to be trusted and employed in his Czarish majesty's service.

On

On the 19th, Lieutenant-general *Allart* Book and Colonel *Gordon*, together, with several IV. engineers and officers, went out to view the fields, three leagues round the camp, and found the roads every way impassable, except at one place, called *Piahagie*; where, on their return, Colonel *Gordon* advised, without loss of time, to raise a fort, and put some hundreds of men in it, with a few pieces of cannon, and he would answer for it, that the enemy would never come up to attempt the relief of the town, but by taking that fort; which they could not easily do, seeing it could always be reinforced from the *Russian* camp, but no regard was had to this: for, the Czar himself did not believe, that it was possible for the King of *Sweden* to attempt the relief of the town in that season of the year, and so slighted this advice.

On the 3d of *October*, the Czar at the head of one and twenty battallions of foot, and four regiments of horse-militia, together, with the artillery, ammunition and provisions, entered within the lines, having crossed the river *Narva*, on a strong timber-bridge, artfully joined together, leaving on the other side, three regiments of infantry, with four squadrons of horse, to invest *Ivanogrod* at the same time.

BOOK Two days after, General *Weid* entered

IV. the lines with the rest of the army, amounting to about ten thousand foot. In the night the trenches were opened, and two different attacks carried on, under the direction of the Duke of *Croy* and Lieutenant-general *Allart*: the Duke being as yet only a volunteer, not having got the command, until the Generalissimo, *Theodore Alexewich Golovin*, accompanied the Czar to *Novogrod*, which shall soon be spoke of.

Narva besieged.

On the 6th, in the afternoon, the enemy made a sally, but were repulsed, with the loss of a few men. Baron *Bloomberg*, the Colonel of the guards, commanding in the approaches.

The two attacks were carried on so expeditiously, that against the 15th, the Batteries, one of twelve pieces of cannon, and two of ten each, together with the bomb-battery, played so vigorously, that before the end of *October*, the cannon-ball and bombs were almost consumed, to the great mortification of General *Allart*: for this expedition was carried on in such a hurry, and in so bad a season of the year, the roads being so deep, that the waggons with the ammunition stuck so fast, that the horses were not able to draw them farther; which occasioned his Czarish majesty to employ all the horses about *Novogrod* and *Pleskow*,

Pleskow, and at last, to march himself, Book
together with Generalissimo *Golovin*, and IV.
his favourite *Alexander Menzikoff*, to ha-
sten up (together, with the ammunition)
twelve more regiments of infantry, leaving
the command to the Duke of *Croy*, an ab-
solute stranger, who had no time to make
any alteration in the disposition of the ar-
my, and was but little or nothing assisted
by the *Russian* generals: neither had he
ammunition wherewithal to carry on the
siege; which was exceeding mortifying,
considering, that they had been already three
weeks and upwards without action. And
if there had been sufficient ammunition
from the beginning, the *Russians* had been
masters of the place, before it had been
possible for the King of *Sweden* to have come
up to its relief, which did not happen till
the 19th of *November*; when, being fa-
voured with a great fall of snow, he formed
his army into two divisions, carrying on
the left himself against the right of the
Russians, where he supposed the best troops
were, and giving the command of the
right to General *Ottovelling*. The two
attacks were made, much about one time,
and were so successful, (notwithstanding
their meeting with greater resistance, than
could have been well expected, from raw,
unex-

BOOK unexperienced men), that they pierced the
IV. lines ; where, on the King's attack they obtained an absolute victory, the *Russians* abandoning the lines without any possibility of making them stand. The Duke of *Croy* did all that was possible, till at last seeing matters in this desperate situation, he gave himself up, as did the Colonel of the guards, *Baron Bloomberg*, prisoners of war.

On the right-hand attack, though the *Swedes* entered, and forced the lines, yet the *Russians* maintained a fight with them until it was dark, and forced them to retire towards their left, where they fired upon one another for some time, till they discovered the mistake. The *Russians*, who, were of sufficient numbers, had they attacked more vigorously, in the confusion the *Swedes* were in, might have tore the victory out of the King's hands ; but being all new raised troops, except the regiment of guards, which was of a piece with the rest, in having been never engaged before with disciplined troops, and few good officers as yet amongst them, it was no miracle to see an army of unexperienced, raw troops, consisting of about thirty-four thousand men entrenched, beat by a body of about nine thousand veterans, as good troops, and as well commanded as any in
Europe,


Europe, with so resolute a Prince at their head. * BOOK IV.

For the *Russian* army, whatever some authors have amused the world with, did not amount even to the numbers foreaid; considering, that there ought to be some allowance made for the dead, killed and wounded, during a siege of above two months; and likewise, it is to be considered, that four thousand men were employed from the beginning, on the other side of the river before *Ivanograd*, who could not be attacked, nor of use to those who were so, consequently, they marched off with their artillery, &c. undisturbed.

As the right of the *Russians* had been forced and routed by the King of *Sweden*, they fled in multitudes, both foot and horse, to get over the river by the bridge, thronging upon it without consideration, so that it gave way entirely, and numbers were lost.

The left, by this means, seeing their retreat cut off, the general officers and colonels

* *Voltaire* makes the *Russian* army to consist of an hundred thousand men, and the troops at *Novograd* fifty thousand; whereas, the whole did not amount to above fifty thousand from the beginning, viz. thirty-eight thousand at the siege of *Narva* and *Ivanograd*, and twelve thousand at *Novograd*. The author of the memoirs of *Peter the Great* is in the same mistake.

BOOK nels met, to consider of what was next to IV, be done; where, after some reasoning to  and again, it was resolved to carry a line betwixt the countervallation and circumvallation, as near to the river on the left as could contain the troops, and to stand the enemy's attack next day; to raise and strengthen the lines on all sides: for which, they had sufficient time, it not being past four o'clock in the afternoon, and, having plenty of provisions, and ammunition enough, and about twenty-four field-pieces. If this design had been followed out, the King of *Sweden* would have thought more than once, before he would have ventured on a second attack, not being able to muster six thousand sound men the day after the battle.

But as the work was going on, and advancing tolerably well, there came an Adjutant from Prince *James Dolgoruky*, who was next in command to the Duke of *Croy*, acquainting General *Weid*, who commanded on the left, that he, with the other generals on the right, had entered into a treaty with the enemy; who had agreed, that they altogether, should be allowed to march home without arms unsearched; which conditions they had accepted of, therefore, ordered him to make no farther opposition, but receive the foresaid terms.

To

to which it was objected by the foreign BOOK colonels; that it would be ignominious, for IV. so great a body to deliver up their arms to an enemy not above half their number; that for their part, they would rather venture a second attack, were they sure to be cut to pieces, than submit to such dishonourable conditions; that besides, they were persuaded the enemy would allow them to march off with artillery, arms, &c. rather than hazard a second attack: they added, that General *Weid* could receive no orders from Prince *Dolgoruky*, a prisoner, and in the enemy's hands. But *Weid*, who was made a General, by favour, a man of no experience, and who, perhaps, had never engaged an enemy before, advanced that Prince *Dolgoruky*, was superior to him in command, whose orders he durst not disobey; therefore was positive, he would submit to the terms he had agreed to; which were no other (as appeared next day) than to surrender at discretion. For, as the *Russian* troops passed along the front of the *Swedish* army, which was drawn up in one line, to make the greater appearance, they detained the generals, colonels, and some others, allowing the rest to march off without arms. Most of the foreign officers quitted their commands, and shewed their dissent, so far, that they went off together

BOOK to some distance, though they could not
IV. shun being made prisoners of war,

~~~~~ It was not so surprising a matter, that the *Russian* Generals went into so dishonourable a treaty, as at that time, they had neither experience nor resolution.

The loss the *Russians* sustained on this occasion, amounted to about twelve thousand men killed in the field and drowned in the retreat; eighteen thousand marched off disarmed; four thousand of the *Novogrodish* and *Pleskowish* cavalry, knowing the country, crossed the river, some leagues above the town, and got safe to *Pleskow*; which, together with the four thousand that had invested *Ivanograd*, make the *Russian* army to amount in whole, from the beginning, to thirty-eight thousand men. The *Swedes* had about two thousand five hundred killed and wounded.

The Duke of *Croy*, and Lieutenant-general *Allart*, together with the foreign colonels, the morning before the *Swedes* came up, proposed to march out, without the lines, a body of fifteen thousand men, with twenty-four field-pieces, covered in their front and flanks, with turn-pikes, or *chevaux de frise*: which, if the *Russian* generals had agreed to, it is very probable, the King of *Sweden* (who certainly in this event, would have attacked) might have  
run

run a very great risque, and lost at least the BOOK  
half, if not the whole of his army, be- IV.  
fore he could have forced the *Russians*.  
For doubtless, in that situation, they would  
have stood better to it, than it was possible  
for them to do within their lines, but no  
arguments could prevail.

The Czar being at *Novogrod*, ready to  
march with twelve regiments of foot, to-  
gether with sufficiency of ammunition to  
carry on the siege; on hearing of the defeat  
and disaster of his army, was much struck  
at first; but recollecting himself, said, 'I  
' know very well, the *Swedes*, will for some  
' time beat us, but at length, we may learn  
' to beat them.'

Here, in my opinion, the King of *Sweden*,  
committed his first over-sight, in al-  
lowing the eighteen thousand disarmed  
*Russians* to return to their own country;  
he might have kept them all prisoners  
of war, (having surrendered at discretion),  
and have dispersed them over the whole  
kingdom of *Sweden* amongst the farmers,  
where they might have been of use, and la-  
boured for their bread. Besides, in this  
action of *Narva*, they learned something of  
the art of war; and, consequently, were  
much better than any new levies could be.  
There were also sufficient provisions in  
the *Russian* camp, to have supported that

BOOK number, for more than three months.

IV. But this hot, young Prince, in all the actions where he commanded himself, was pleased with the victory, and would not allow his troops to pursue after the enemy; saying, 'If we kill them all, there will be an end of fighting.'

After this unlucky affair, the Czar feared nothing so much, as that the king of *Sweden* should have marched at the head of a numerous army into his country, either against *Novogrod* or *Pleskow*; neither of which could have held out, a long siege, being exceeding great towns, full of people, and not well fortified; but the most plentiful country, and best inhabited of all *Russia*.

The Czar takes measures for repairing his loss.

But as soon as the Czar perceived, that the King of *Sweden* directed his march towards *Poland*, he became easy; fell upon measures to raise and discipline a numerous army; and issued out some time after, a manifesto, inviting into his country and service, foreigners of all nations, who had served, and understood military affairs; appointing them large salaries, together, with advancement to a higher commission at their entry; which succeeded so well, that multitudes repaired to him.

But, to return to the King of *Sweden*, he, in my humble opinion, committed at this

this time, his second and main oversight: Book  
 for, if he had marched into *Russia*, at the IV.  
 head of thirty thousand *Swedes*, which he  
 could have done, with the greatest ease ima- The King  
 ginable; the Czar must have gone into his of Swe-  
 terms. For such an army, so well com- den's cr-  
 ror.  
 manded, with so resolute a Prince at its  
 head, was able to have cut to pieces, all  
 that the Czar could possibly have opposed  
 to them.

The *Russians* as yet, had no military ge-  
 nius, no, not their gentry, far less their  
 commonality; and then, had he left Gene-  
 ral *Levin*, (who was killed some time after,  
 at his side near *Thorn*), or some other able  
 General, whereof he had not a few, to-  
 gether with a body of twelve or fifteen  
 thousand *Swedes*, to have kept King *Au-*  
*gustus* in play, he had ended matters with  
 the Czar in one campaign. For the *Russians*  
 losing one battle, which they could not  
 well have avoided, must have allowed the  
 enemy possession of the best part of their  
 country; since, excepting *Novogrod* and  
*Pleskow*, there was not one place of  
 any strength to stop their march to the  
 capital, which was quite open too, and the  
 castle not defended: by these means, the  
 King of *Sweden* might have tore this  
 empire to pieces. Princess *Sophia*, was still  
 alive, and had a strong party, who would  
 have

BOOK have joined him to a man, particularly, IV. the old-soldiers, the *Strelitzes*, whom the Czar had broke and disgraced about a year before; after this, what could he not have done.

But this generous, young Prince, had no regard to the maxims of his predecessors, who, never would continue a war against *Russia*, above a year or two at most: but as soon as they were ready for a new war, always cut them to pieces, and then clapped up a new peace. Never, any had it, in their power, so much, to get advantageous terms, as *Charles XII*. But he, without regard to interest or policy, (his idol being honour), imagined, that since he had given a check to the *Danes*, and routed the *Russians* at *Narva*, (whom, to his great misfortune, he had, but too much despised) he must next attack King *Augustus*. In order thereto, he marches in the spring, crossing the *Duina*, near *Riga*,; attacks and defeats the *Saxons*, commanded by marshal *Stenaw* and Prince *Ferdinand* of *Courland*; then marches through that country into *Lithuania*; where, being joined by Count *Sapega*, and other disaffected *Poles*, he lays down the plan of dethroning King *Augustus*.

He had it still in his power, to have taken right measures against *Russia*, there being

being no time lost: he could have marched **Book**  
with a sufficient army against *Pleskow*, **IV.**  
and taken it; then continued his march  
towards *Moscow* and settled with the Czar.  
For, the *Russians* at this time, were not  
much improved, there being neither army,  
officers nor generals, capable to lead them  
against the *Swedes*. *Sheremetoff*, was the  
only officer the Czar could reckon upon;  
and he had never had to do with any but  
*Tartars*. The man was brave indeed; but  
understood little or nothing of discipline, till  
the frequent occasions he had to oppose the  
*Swedes*, gave him some tincture thereof.

*End of the Fourth Book.*

**T H E**





T H E  
H I S T O R Y  
O F  
P E T E R the G R E A T,  
E M P E R O R of R U S S I A.

---

B O O K V.

**I**N the beginning of the year 1701, the BOOK V.  
*Dutch*, and other foreign ministers used their utmost endeavours, to incline the Czar to make peace with *Sweden*; which 1701.  
*Charles XII.* would the more willingly have gone into, that he might be the better revenged on King *Augustus*, who he knew, was the first projector and promoter of this war. But the Czar would by no means hearken to a peace, unless the King of *Sweden*, would restore to him the province of *Ingria*, which had been formerly a part of the *Russian* empire, and had given the first sovereigns to *Russia*: for this was the  
 VOL. I. X true

BOOK true cause of the war; and not as was alleged, the affront the Czar met with at *Riga*. Besides, he threatened, that if the maritime powers joined his enemies against him or his allies, not only to confiscate all the goods belonging to the merchants of these nations, but to destroy entirely their trade; declaring he would not enter into any terms of peace without the consent of his allies.

He sent a minister into *Poland*, to persuade the republic to join, and go heartily with their King into the war against *Sweden*; which the *Poles* would by no means agree to, unless his Czarish majesty restored to the republic the towns of *Kiow* and *Smolensko*, which had been taken from them by his predecessors in former wars. This, the Czar thought very unreasonable, seeing he had obliged himself to support them with men and money, to recover *Livonia*.

In the mean time, King *Augustus*, with his *Saxon* troops, takes possession of *Radziveloff* and *Birzen* in *Lithuania*. On the 26th of *February*, the Czar and he met at the last named place, where they not only renewed their alliance, but laid down new measures, to prosecute the war with vigour: King *Augustus* undertaking to furnish the Czar with a good many thousand disciplined *Germans*, in exchange for the

The Czar  
meets with  
King *Augustus*.

the like number of *Russians*. The two BOOK  
 princes continued together till the 14th V.  
 of *March*. The Czar endeavoured all he ~  
 could, to perswade several of the *Polish*  
 senators to enter into their King's mea-  
 sures, and at the same time, in order to ful-  
 fil his part, he caused march twenty thou-  
 sand of his troops into *Lithuania* to join  
 the *Saxons*; but neither the Czar nor their  
 own King could prevail, notwithstanding  
 the advantageous offers his Czarish majesty  
 made them, of annexing all *Livonia* to the  
 crown of *Poland*, to maintain an army in  
 their service, and to advance instantly two  
 millions of rix-dollars; they remained sted-  
 fast not to break with *Sweden*.

The Czar sent also an Ambassador this  
 year into *Denmark*, to persuade the *Danes*  
 to make an irruption into *Schonen*, to which  
 he promised to contribute all he could.  
 But the King of *Denmark* did not think  
 it time, therefore, would wait for a more  
 proper occasion.

On the 13th of *July*, a fire broke out in A great  
 the imperial palace, and in the city of fire in  
*Moskow*, which consumed several thousands Moscow,  
 of houses, and burst the great bell, called,  
*Ivan Veliky*, which fell to the ground. Its  
 weight was computed to be about three  
 hundred and fifty-six centners; it was twenty  
 feet wide, upwards of two feet thick, and

BOOK twenty fathoms in circumference; the Czar

V. caused enlarge it to four hundred centners, and built an immensely strong steeple to support it.

The  
Czar's suc-  
cess in Li-  
vonia.

Marshal *Sheremetoff*, in the beginning of September, marched into *Livonia*, with an army of twenty thousand foot and Dragoons, besides *Cossacks*; he defeated several small bodies of the enemy, particularly at *Rappin*, where the *Swedes* were cut to piece; but at *Rauch* the *Russians* were repulsed with considerable loss. Nevertheless, General *Grinfort*, who commanded in that country, for want of sufficient troops, was not able to keep the field.

The Czar taking the opportunity, after the King of *Sweden* had passed the *Duina*, and beat the *Saxons* in *Courland*, ordered Marshal *Sheremetoff* to march with all the troops under his command, and fall upon Major-general *Stepenback*, who lay in and about *Derpt*, with a body of seven thousand horse and foot, where a sharp encounter ensued. The *Russians*, eager to revenge their defeat at *Rauch*, attacked furiously; so that after a dispute, for the space of an hour, the *Swedes* were totally defeated: the *Russians* pursued them above a league, cutting down and taking prisoners: their whole artillery, baggage, ammunition, with seven hundred prisoners

soners remaining to the victors. The *Swedes* lost on this occasion, about one thousand killed, and had near as many wounded; the *Russians* were indeed three to one against the *Swedes*. The Book V.


In the beginning of the year 1702, the Czar published a declaration, offering great encouragement to foreigners of all nations who understood military affairs and had served some time, to enter into his service. 1702.

*Staroska Oginsky*, was reinforced with a body of five thousand *Russians*, to enable him to act against Count *Sapeya*, who, together with other discontented *Poles*, had declared for the King of *Sweden*.

The Czar marched into *Ingria* at the head of forty thousand men, took *Marunburgh* and *Iamgorod*, two small places, which he enlarged and fortified. The *Swedes* having but few troops in that part of the country, were able to make but little resistance; for Major-general *Slepenback*, who meditated nothing but revenge, had gathered all the forces in the country together, both regular troops and militia, in order to oppose Marshal *Sheremetoff*, who had marched from *Pleskow* with an army of about twenty thousand foot and dragoons, with design to give him battle. The *Swedes* were still possessed with the opinion, that one *Swede* was able to beat five *Russians*; The Czar marches into Ingria.  
giving

BOOK giving out over all, that they had never  
 V. been beat but by such unequal force as  
 ~~~~~ ten against one. They instanced the af-  
 fair at *Rauch*, where a handful of *Swedes*
 repulsed numbers of *Russians*; so that Ma-
 jor-general *Slepenback* not only resolved to
 stand his ground, but to advance and attack
 the enemy. In order thereto, he command-
 ed out a party of three hundred horse to
 incommode them. This party on the 18th
 encountered a party of eight hundred
Russian dragoons, (commanded by Colonel
Fastman) which Lieutenant-colonel *Coul-*
bars (who commanded the *Swedes*) attack-
 ed so vigorously, that he put them in disor-
 der, and forced them to retire with the loss
 of fifty men or thereabout. The *Swedes*
 likewise had some men killed, amongst
 whom was Major *Rose*.

On the 19th, the *Russian* army marched
 towards *Stagrilitz*, and came in sight of the
 enemy, who were encamped there. Upon
 General *Slepenback's* having crossed the
 small river *Embach*, he advanced towards the
Russians; but having observed their coun-
 tenances and numbers, he thought fit to
 repass the *Embach* and form his corps to
 the best advantage in his former camp,
 after having demolished the bridge; but the
 river was quite dry, so that the Marshal
 had only use for some few fascines to carry
 over

over the artillery; which being done in **BOOK**
 fight of the *Swedes*, he marched up in or- **V.**
 der of battle against them. General *Sle-*
penback had allowed the *Russians* to ad- 
 vance so near, that there was no retreating; The bat-
 tle of
 Stagriltz.
 so that he made the attack, and did it so
 vigorously, that he put the left wing in-
 to some disorder, and became master of
 some cannon: but Marshal *Sheremetoff*,
 after having reinforced it, attacked the
Swedes with such resolution, that after
 little more than an hour's dispute, they
 were so overpowered, that the *Russians*
 not only regained the cannon they had lost
 at the first onset, but made themselves ma-
 sters of the whole *Swedish* artillery, and
 pushed them so on all hands, that General
Slepenback seeing the day irrecoverably lost, The
 Swedes
 defeated
 again.
 retreated with the remains of his army after
 the best manner he could, and never halt-
 ed till he got under the cannon of *Per-*
naw; and on his retreat set fire to a maga-
 zine of provisions, lest it should fall into
 the enemy's hands.

In this battle there was about two thou-
 sand of the *Swedes* killed, and some more
 than a thousand wounded and taken pri-
 soners; amongst whom, were General-ad-
 jutant Count *Levenhaupt*, and Lieutenant-
 colonel *Horn*, with about twenty captains
 and subalterns. The *Russians* sustained
 greater

BOOK greater loss, having above four thousand
 IV. men killed and wounded, but no officer of
 distinction. General *Slepenback's* army, by
 the *Russian* account, amounted to above nine
 thousand men, though the *Swedes* do not
 allow them to have been much above five;
 but they certainly were more. When the
 Czar got the accounts of this victory, he
 said, 'God be praised, we are come the
 'length to beat the *Swedes* double to single;
 'who knows but in a few years more, we
 'may able to deal with them on equal
 'terms?'

The Czar after this victory had thoughts
 at first of besieging *Derpt*, but it was put off
 at this time, partly on account of the late-
 ness of the season; as also, of the bad ac-
 counts they had from *Poland*. For though
 his *Russian* majesty was successful on his part,
 yet his ally King *Augustus* was losing
 ground unaccountably; for with an army
 of thirty-two thousand *Poles* and *Saxons*,
 he was entirely defeated at *Cletchoff* by the
 King of *Sweden*, whose army did not a-
 mount to above sixteen thousand: the Duke
 of *Holstein* was killed by a cannon-ball in
 the first onset. The Czar however pushed
 his point without loss of time; he ordered
 Marshal *Sheremetoff* to march into *Ingria*,
 and besiege a strong and important fort
 called *Notteburgh*; which he invested on the

King *Au-*
gustus de-
 feated
 by the
Swedes.

22d of *September*, and against the 5th of *Book*
October, having made sufficient breaches, the V.
 attack was led on by Colonel Count *James*
Gordon, who was twice repulsed with con-
 siderable loss; but on the third assault the
 commandant caused beat the chamade, in
 order to capitulate, having neither men nor
 ammunition to hold out longer.

Notte-
burgh sur-
 renders to
 the *Russi-*
ans.

The articles of capitulation were as fol-
 lows; that the commandant, Lieutenant-
 colonel *Slepenback*, with the whole garrison,
 officers and soldiers, should march out
 through the breach with their pieces loaded,
 drums beating, colours flying, four pieces
 of cannon, with thirteen charges each; bag
 and baggage, sick and wounded, together
 with their wives and children to be convey-
 ed safe to *Narva*, with provisions for eight
 days.


The gaining of these two battles at
Derpt and *Stagrilitz*, together with the tak-
 ing of this important place, gave the Czar
 no small pleasure; and to encourage his
 troops to behave always well, he gratified
 the officers and soldiers who had been
 wounded on these occasions. The Czar made
 a present of a thousand rubles to Count *Gor-*
dou, who had received a slight wound in the
 ankle, to inferior officers according to their
 rank, and to every soldier one ruble. His
 majesty caused forthwith repair the breaches,

BOOK adding some more fortifications, and changing its name from *Notteburgh* to *Slusselburgh*, as signifying the key to that country.

The Czar
under-
takes the
building of
St. Peters-
burgh,
1703.

In the year 1703, the Czar took the field early, cantonned his troops in the month of *March*, and about the 20th of *April*, brought the army together, then marched, and invested another small, but important place, called *Nyen-Chance*, which surrendered on the 14th of *May*. The commodious situation of this place made the Czar resolve to erect on it a considerable town, with a strong citadel, consisting of six royal bastions, together with good out-works; this he soon put in execution, and called it *St. Petersburgh*, which is now esteemed so strong, that it will be scarcely possible for the *Swedes* ever to take it by force.

As he was digesting the scheme of this, his favourite town, which he designed not only for the place of his residence, but the principal harbour for his shipping, as having a communication with the sea by the river *Nyen*; having duly observed and sounded it all over, he found it would be a very natural project to erect a fort in the isle opposite to the island of *Ratusary*; which for a whole league over to the land is not above four feet deep. This is a most curious work scarcely

scarcely to be matched. He went about it BOOK
in winter, in the month of *November*, V.
when the ice was so strong, that it could 
bear any weight, causing carry materials,
such as timber, stone, &c. The foundation
was laid thus: trees of about thirty feet in
length, and about fifteen inches thick, were
taken and joined artfully together into
chests ten feet high; these chests were fill-
ed with stones of great weight, which sunk
down through the sea, and made a very
solid foundation, upon which he raised his
fort, called *Cronstat*, which contains a gar-
rison of three hundred men and seventy
pieces of cannon; about two hundred fa-
thoms distant from the island *Ratusary*,
where there is also erected another strong
fort, with a tolerable small town called
Cronburgh, where the sea-officers are com-
monly lodged. Betwixt *Cronstat* and *Cron-*
burgh is all sea, deep only in the middle, a-
bout thirty fathoms broad, so that ships of
great burthen can pass only one after ano-
ther: these two forts secure *St. Peterfs-*
burgh from any insult by sea, and make
it perhaps, one of the best and safest har-
bours in the known world. The work
gave no small umbrage to the *Swedes*.
In carrying materials for it, there were
upwards of eight thousand horses destroy-
ed, and near as many men.

BOOK This year the Czar altered the coin all
 V. over *Russia*: before there had been nothing
 ~~~~~ but copecks and half-copecks, which is pence  
 The coin altered. and half-pence, of good silver and full  
 weight; the rix-dollars and ducats were  
 foreign coin: he called into the mint all  
 the old coin, struck new copecks and half-  
 copecks, a fourth-part less in weight than the  
 former, tho' of the same value in the coun-  
 try; and to encourage his people to bring  
 in the old coin, he gave a hundred and  
 ten rubles of the new for a hundred of  
 the old; by which means he brought into  
 his treasury fifteen *per cent* of all the cur-  
 rent coin in the nation. Then he caused  
 strike \* ruble, half-ruble, and quarter-ruble  
 pieces; also grivens, half-grivens, and three-  
 penny pieces in silver; halfpennies and far-  
 things in copper. He caused also strike  
 ducats of the same weight and value as the  
*Imperial, Hungarian and Turkish* ones.

This enabled the Czar to pay the fo-  
 reign officers of all ranks who had enter-  
 ed in great numbers into his service. For  
 tho' this empire be very extensive, yet the  
 revenues are but small, scarce amounting  
 to two millions sterling. But the Czar has  
 to the amount of many millions more of  
 real

\* A ruble is an hundred, and a griven ten copecks; the  
 value being diminished one-fourth part in foreign commerce,  
 besides the exchange.

real substantial effects, having large estates Book  
 over the whole empire, which furnish him IV.  
 wherewithal to maintain his armies and ~  
 fleets. There are magazines not only on  
 the frontiers, but also over the whole  
 country; besides the rivers being all na-  
 vigable, he can transport provisions from  
 one corner of the empire to the other.

King *Augustus* had endeavoured some time  
 before to procure, if not a general, a sepa-  
 rate peace, to which the King of *Prussia* offer-  
 ed his mediation, but all in vain. The King <sup>King Au-</sup>  
 of *Sweden* declared, that he could put no <sup>gustus's</sup>  
 confidence either in the King of *Poland* or <sup>projects</sup>  
 the Czar, they having broke faith to him <sup>for a</sup>  
 already; therefore that he would make the <sup>peace.</sup>  
 best of it, and endeavour to bring both  
 these princes so low, that he could not be  
 affraid of any disturbance from them for  
 the time to come. Then King *Augustus*  
 fell upon another expedient, which was to  
 send his then favourite lady, the Countess  
 of *Koningsmark* into the King of *Sweden's*  
 camp; a person of as much wit and beau-  
 ty as any; judging it impossible, that the  
 King of *Sweden* could resist her charms:  
 but in this he was also mistaken, for the  
 young Prince was so far proof against them,  
 that he would not so much as see her; so  
 she was obliged to return to *Warsaw*;  
 saying, ' That she believed the King of  
 ' *Sweden*

BOOK ' *Sweden* was affraid of no-body but her.'

V. The Czar when he came to be informed of this scheme, conceived such an esteem for the King of *Sweden* that he retained it ever after; and blamed his ally King *Augustus* for making use of such poor expedients.

On the 11th of *June*, Major-general *Cronfort* ordered a party of eight hundred grenadiers and dragoons, under the command of Colonel *Tiefenhausen*, to fall upon a body of *Russians* posted in the village, *Lake*, who had not got time to fortify themselves before the *Swedes* made their attack, which was vigorous, and as resolutely opposed for a time, untill the *Russians* being overpowered, were forced to quit the village and retire to their boats; but not before General *Cronfort* came up with two thousand men more to reinforce the Colonel. In the retreat, the *Russians* lost a few men, as also their boats which the *Swedes* set fire to.

In the beginning of *July*, Marshal *Sheermetoff*, getting intelligence that General *Cronfort* stood encamped at a place called *Sisterbeck* with about three or four thousand men, marched in the evening with a much superior number of *Russians*, came up and attacked them by break of day, when after some more than an hour's dispute the *Swedes*

The *Russians* grow still more expert in war.

*Swedes* left the field. General *Cronfort* had the precaution as the enemy first appeared, to send off his artillery and baggage, then his infantry; and at last, was obliged to retire himself with the cavalry, having lost about an hundred and fifty men killed and taken prisoners. The *Russians* did not lose fifty men on this occasion. The *Swedish* General retired towards *Wiburgh*, nine leagues distant from the field of battle, much surprized to see the *Russians* attack with so much bravery and in so good order.

The Czar was all this time much taken up with his project at *St. Petersburg* and *Cronstat*, and resolved to keep the enemy at so great a distance, that they might not give any disturbance to these works.

After this successful campaign, his Czarish majesty entered the city of *Moscow* in triumph, causing the prisoners to march two and two through the whole city.

The republic of *Poland* notwithstanding all the endeavours their King and the Czar could use, could not as yet be persuaded to enter into an alliance against *Sweden*.

The *Tartars* this year, finding that the *Russians* had so much work upon their hands, caused their depute at the *Porte* demand that they might be allowed to make incursions into *Russia*; which they said would oblige the Czar to restore *Asoph* to the

BOOK  
V.

BOOK the *Turks*, and make him pay the yearly tri-

V. bute the former Czars were wont to pay to the  
~~~~~ Chams: they demanded also, that their  
Cham should be continued for life. The
Porte was influenced by the prime Visier,
and only granted that their Cham should be
continued for life.

End of the Fifth Book.

T H E

T H E
H I S T O R Y
O F

P E T E R the *G R E A T*,
E M P E R O R of *R U S S I A*.

B O O K VI.

IN the year 1704, a new King was elect-
ed in *Poland*: the election was concerted
and carried on by the King of *Sweden*, to-
gether with the Primate and a few *Polish*
senators, who went most of them into it ra-
ther by force than inclination, the Primate
being an unsteady truckling kind of man,
who seemed rather to be for no King at all.
The enterprising King of *Sweden*, never
imagining that it could be possible for him-
self to fall into adversity, was much taken
with his scheme of dethroning kings, and
disposing of kingdoms, not regarding at the
same time what he was daily losing at home:

Book VI.

1704.
The King
of *Sweden*
resolves to
dethrone
Augustus.

VOL. I.

Z

for,

BOOK for he doubted not, but when he came to
 VI. treat with the Czar at his capital, he would
 ~~~~~ get all these towns restored with interest.

The Czar  
 writes to  
 the republic.

The Czar, to put a stop to this designed election, wrote a letter to the republic, exhorting, encouraging, and even threatening them to continue firm to their King, who had been duly elected, and whom he said he would support with all his power, as he was obliged by treaty and brotherly love; with a great deal more to that purpose. This letter had such effect, that of forty senators who had subscribed to the dethroning *Augustus* the evening before, only twenty-six adhered to it next day.

After these resolutions, King *Augustus* being supported by the confederacy of *Sandomir*, kept no more measures with that of *Warsaw*. The great General of the crown, *Fineasky*, together with the crown-army adhered to the King, after having left the confederates of *Warsaw*, where he found that matters did not go to his mind.

The Czar  
 and King  
*Augustus*  
 make a  
 new alliance.

The Czar and King *Augustus* entered into a new alliance, by which it was stipulate, that there should be an offensive and defensive league betwixt the two monarchs and the republic of *Poland*, so long as the war continued; that the one should not make peace without the other's approbation; that the places in the *Polish Ukraine* occupied by  
 Colonel

Colonel *Pally*, should be restored; also, BOOK VI.  
that the Czar should yield to the republic, without any limitation, all *Polish Livonia*, in case they could conquer it; and that he should furnish and maintain on his own charge, twelve thousand men in the service of the King and the republic, with artillery and ammunition in proportion; that he should pay the two millions formerly mentioned, besides what he should advance to the King; and, that when the King of *Sweden* should be forced out of *Poland*, the King and republic, should carry the war into *Sweden* in conjunction with the Czar.

The King of *Denmark*, who had observed an exact neutrality since the treaty of *Travendal*, being urged by the Czar and King *Augustus*, to make a descent on *Schoonen*, declared that he was willing to enter into a new alliance, and was making preparations thereto, but did not think it as yet a proper occasion to act openly; the King of *Sweden* having still a strong body of troops in that country.

The Czar having augmented his armies considerably, opened the campaign with the siege of *Narva* and *Derpt*, having made preparations for that end during the winter. In the beginning of *April*, *Narva* was invested both by land and water, several bat-

BOOK teries being raised on the side of the river to

VI. hinder succours from getting in to the town ;

so that Vice-admiral *de Prow*, who had on board a thousand men, with provisions for the garrison, was forced to return to *Viburgh*. The *Swedish* generals omitted nothing that was in their power to divert the Czar from his design on these towns, but they had not strength ; so all their endeavours proved ineffectual. The siege of *Narva*

*Narva*  
and *Derpt*  
invested.

*va* was carried on by Marshal *Ogilvie*, an old experienced officer, and that of *Derpt* by Marshal *Sheremetoff* : both these sieges were going on at the same time, but the Czar considering the difficulties they would meet with in becoming masters of *Derpt*, so long as the *Swedes* were masters of the *Pipus* sea, where Commodore *Loscher* had about twelve or fifteen small vessels well equipped, (but had imprudently retired during the winter, within the river *Embach*) ordered a great number of boats to stop the mouth of that river, and to place themselves behind the small island *Perkasary* : he then posted strong bodies of foot on each side the river ; so notwithstanding the Commodore's attempting to get to sea, his ships were taken one after another. *Loscher* in

Commo-  
dore *Los-*  
cher's de-  
perate ac-  
tion.

despair, and resolving not to be a spectator of a disaster occasioned by his own folly, set fire to the powder, and blew himself up

with

with all on board. The *Russians* gained Book  
this easy victory on the 4th of *May*, and VI.  
became not only masters of the *Pipus* sea, ~~~~~  
but also of the river *Embach*: there were  
five hundred *Swedes* made prisoners on this  
occasion, and about one hundred killed.  
The *Russians* did not lose twenty men.

All difficulties being removed, the siege  
went on in form, and three attacks were carried  
on against the 1st of *June*: the commandant  
of *Derpt*, Colonel *Skyte*, caused set the  
suburbs on fire, and prepared for a vigorous  
defence. The attacks were carried on in  
presence of the Czar, who went from *Narva*  
to *Derpt*, and from *Derpt* to *Narva*,  
directing at the same time both sieges; and  
sometimes would pass to *St. Petersburg*,  
his favourite town, of which, by this time the  
foundations were laid, and the works going  
on with all possible expedition.

On the 24th of *May*, *Narva* was formally  
besieged, having been invested for above  
a month before: the Governor, Baron *Horn*,  
sent a letter to General *Slepenback*, desiring  
immediate succours; which falling into  
Marshal *Ogilvie*'s hands, he made use of the  
following stratagem, which succeeded tolerably  
well. Having taken from the *Swedish*  
prisoners all their livery-coats, (which are  
of remarkable colours, a dark blue, faced  
up with yellow) he caused march out of the  
camp

BOOK camp, under the silence of the night, some

VI. more than two thousand *Russians* cloathed  
 after this manner, who the next morning by  
 break of day were to make a false attack on  
 the left-hand of the *Russian* lines, giving the  
 signal directed in the letter: they did so; and  
 the Governor not doubting but it was suc-  
 cours sent him by General *Slepenback*, or-  
 dered out of the garrison two hundred horse,  
 and eight hundred foot, to facilitate their  
 entry; but the horse coming up at full gal-  
 lop, fell into the ambuscade the Marshal  
 had laid for them, and were all cut to pic-  
 ces or taken prisoners. The foot, who were  
 commanded by Colonel *Loade*, discovering  
 the fallacy, retired in all haste within the  
 covert-way, thence into the town; where  
*Loade* acquainted the Governor that the  
*Russians* had imposed on him, and that  
 he had no succours to expect.

Major-general *Slepenback* was all this  
 time under *Reval* with three regiments of  
 horse and dragoons, amounting to about  
 two thousand four hundred men; and lest  
 he should attempt to send in succours to the  
 besieged, Marshal *Ogilvie* ordered Major-  
 general *Renn* with six regiments of dragoons  
 to fall upon him; which *Renn* did so suc-  
 cessfully, that he dispersed them, and took  
 about six hundred prisoners: General  
*Slepenback* escaped to *Reval* with about four  
 hundred

hundred of his body, the rest being cut to pieces. *Renn* came up with this body about break of day, so that he was in amongst them (tho' their horses were all ready faddled) before they could retire, and had the precaution to order a thousand of his party to get in behind them, and endeavour to cut off their retreat. BOOK VI.

The two sieges advanced equally; but *Derpt* being the weakest place surrendered first, Marshal *Sheremetoff*, having with such expedition carried on the attacks, that against the 14th of *June* the batteries played with such success, that upwards of five hundred bombs had been thrown into the town. On the 22d, the besieged made a sally both with horse and foot, but were repulsed with the loss of a Captain and twenty men, besides their commander Lieutenant-colonel *Brant*, who was wounded and taken prisoner.

On the 29th, being the Czar's birth-day, the batteries played sharper than before; so that by this time, two thousand bombs had been thrown into the place. On the 3d of *July* in the afternoon, a great part of the town was set on fire, occasioned by the fire-balls: to the 7th, they continued firing from batteries of twenty-four guns and eleven mortars on the *Russian* port, which was entirely ruined, and a breach made, upwards

BOOK wards of twenty fathoms wide: against the  
 VI. 11th, the batteries being much enlarged,  
 ~~~~~ sufficient troops were ordered for the  
 assault, which was carried on from nine
 o'clock at night, till next morning; the be-
 siegers having made themselves masters of
 the ravaline before the said port. The *Rus-*
sians were in use of making such attacks in
 the night-time, which Marshal *Ogilvie*, a-
 mong the other good things he introduced
 into that service, made them alter. Then,
 a general assault was resolved on; but the
 Governor seeing an impossibility of holding
 out longer, sent out to Colonel *Ridder*,
 who commanded in the approaches, de-
 manding the following articles:

1mo, 'That the Governor, together with
 ' the whole garrison, should be allowed to
 ' march out through the breach, with pieces
 ' loaded, drums beating and colours flying;
 ' ten brass guns, with thirteen charges each;
 ' bag and baggage, their wives, children and
 ' servants, sick and wounded; together with
 ' a month's provisions, and carriages to trans-
 ' port those who were not able to march.

2do, 'That the officers, and others who
 ' could not carry off their effects, should be
 ' allowed to sell or deposite them into safe
 ' hands, until they found an occasion to
 ' transport or otherwise dispose of them.

' *3tio*, That

3^{to}, 'That neither officer nor soldier, Book
 ' man, woman, or child, not even those who VI.
 ' for crimes were arrested and confined in
 ' prison, should be enticed away or carried
 ' off by the *Russians*.

4^{to}, 'That the Governor, with the whole
 ' garrison as is above said, and all other sub-
 ' jects of *Sweden*, whether gentlemen, clergy,
 ' or burghers, of whatsoever quality, with
 ' their wives, children, servants and effects,
 ' should, under safe conduct, be transported
 ' to *Reval*.

5^{to}, 'That on his Czarish majesty's side, all
 ' possible security should be given, in case
 ' the King of *Sweden* should at any time re-
 ' cover the town of *Derpt*, that all should
 ' be restored in the condition things were
 ' now, conformable to inventory.'

The commandant, Colonel *Skyte*, received the terms
 the following answer, 'That it was surpris- allowed
 ' sing the Governor in the present situation of the garri-
 ' affairs (the town being reduced to the ut- son.
 ' most extremity) should demand such unrea-
 ' sonable and unheard of conditions, and
 ' which was more than he could have ex-
 ' pected at the beginning of the siege: never-
 ' theless, to act as a Christian, the Governor
 ' and the whole garrison, of what condition
 ' or quality soever, should be allowed to
 ' march out with their wives, children and
 ' servants, together with as much of their
 Vol. I. A a ' effects

BOOK VI. effects as they could carry, unvisited, with a month's provisions; all the officers, and three companies with their arms; that they should be conducted to *Reval* in all safety; that no persons should be forced against their inclinations, but if any were willing to continue, each according to his station, should meet with suitable encouragement; and that on sight, the Governor should accept of these conditions, else the attacks were to go on as designed: but if accepted, the *Russian* troops should immediately get possession of the gates and posts of the town.

The Governor thanked God for these conditions: the best he expected, was to have been obliged to surrender at discretion.

Derpt surrenders.

Derpt surrendered on the 25th; that afternoon the Czar entered the town, and received the submission of the inhabitants: all the country people who had left their houses, and come into the place for safety, he allowed to return home, and labour their fields as before; promising them all manner of safety and protection, with an exemption from taxes for some years. Then he published a declaration, inviting all the *Livonians* to submit and declare for the King and republic of *Poland*, to whom they of right belonged; with a great deal more to that purpose. Having ended matters

ters at *Derpt*, he marched with ten thousand of his troops to *Narva*, where the siege was carried on with vigour, in three attacks; Lieutenant-general *Stonebeck* carried on the attack against the bastion *Victoria*, Major-general *Chambers* against that of *Honor*, and Major-general *Wonwerden* against that of *Fama*, with an artillery of forty large battering pieces and twenty-four mortars, which played without intermission till the 5th of *August*; then a sufficient breach being made in the bastion *Victoria*, at the same time (by an extraordinary accident), the whole face of the bastion *Honor*, together with a part of the flank, fell down of itself, stone and earth together, which made another sufficient breach; so that it was generally believed the governor would capitulate: and to shun the effusion of more blood, Marshal *Ogilvie* summoned the governor to surrender, considering the disadvantages he lay under, acquainting him in a very civil manner, 'That Major-general *Slepenback*'s party was quite dispersed; that he had no relief or succours to expect from any hand, and that he would do better service to his King and country, by preserving himself and those under his command, than to expose them to visible death, which would infallibly happen, if he forced him to have recourse to the last extremity.' Ma-

BOOK jor-general *Horn* did not answer this complaint
 VI. summons with common civility, but
 gave the Marshal to understand, ' That notwithstanding all these seeming disadvantages, he was resolved to defend and maintain the place his master the King of *Sweden* had intrusted him with, to the last man; not doubting, but that G O D would continue to protect and support so just a cause, as he had visibly done in the year 1700, which he supposed the *Russians* had not as yet quite forgot.'

After this, it was resolved to take the town by assault, but the generals differed in their opinions: *Menzekoff* with others as ignorant as himself, were for carrying on the attacks in the night-time, which Marshal *Ogilvie* strenuously opposed, giving for reason, ' That there was nothing more dangerous or inconvenient, men not being able to discern an enemy from a friend; that all affairs of that nature, ought to be gone about in the day-time, when men are directed by judgment, leaving nothing to chance.' The Czar desired him to do as he judged fittest; the Marshal told the Czar, ' That he would answer for the success, and promised his majesty that the town should be his in a few days.' The Governor, General *Horn*, did all that a man could do, in employing hands to repair the breaches; but
 Marshal

Marshal *Ogilvie* gave him no time, for on Book
 the 9th, about one o'clock in the afternoon, VI.
 the troops being ready in the approaches, and the signal given for the attack, by the firing of five guns, it went so prosperously on, that within less than three quarters of an hour the *Russians* were masters of the place: the Governor and most of the officers being at dinner, expecting no such matter, they had only time to spring one mine; which did the most execution, having killed and disabled upwards of one hundred men.

A few minutes after the town was taken, his Czarish majesty (accompanied by Marshal *Ogilvie* and others) rode through the streets with his sword in his hand, forbidding all further execution on pain of death; and meeting with one of his soldiers carrying a chalice, with some other pieces of plate he had taken out of a church, ordered him instantly to carry these things back, and lay them down where he had found them; which being accordingly done, he caused put safe-guards in all the churches and best houses of the town, so that against night all was peaceable.

Lieutenant-colonel *Slepenback*, who had been some time before commandant in *Notteburgh*, after having surrendered that fort, and being safely conducted to *Narva*, the Governor,

BOOK Governor, Major-general *Horn*, caused put

VI. in arrest; alledging he had given up the
 ~~~~~ fort without necessity; whereof the Czar  
 getting information, he caused him immediately be set at liberty, saying, 'That *Sle-*  
 ' *penback* had behaved more like a soldier  
 ' than *Horn*, having defended the fort thir-  
 ' teen hours, and not surrendering till  
 ' there was no possibility of holding out  
 ' longer; whereas, *Horn* had not held out  
 ' one hour of attack, but run away with se-  
 ' veral officers, and shut themselves up in a  
 ' vault under ground, where with difficulty  
 ' they could be found, after all was peace-  
 ' able.'

When he was ordered into the Czar's  
 presence, being asked how he came to allow  
 matters to come to the last extremity, and  
 why did he not surrender when summoned,  
 after sufficient breaches had been made, ac-  
 cording to the rules of war? he answered,  
 ' That he was still expecting succours, and  
 ' besides, had orders not to give up the town  
 ' on any event.' Then being asked how  
 he came to use a *Russian* Colonel so ill, who  
 had been taken at the former siege of the  
 place, and who had concealed his character  
 in hopes of being the sooner and easier re-  
 lieved, but, that not being able to undergo  
 the hardship and fatigue of the work, bad  
 diet and lodging, after discovering himself,  
 met

met with no better usage, but was kept at Book work as before? the Governor making no VI. satisfactory reply, the Czar told him he should now for that do penance; then he caused shut him up in the same place, and treat him after the same manner he had used the *Russian* Colonel and the rest of the prisoners, where he continued about two weeks, until Marshal *Ogilvie* obtained from his majesty that he might be taken out of that dungeon, and lodged amongst the rest of the prisoners, who were well used. Major-general *Horn's* four daughters were put under Major-general *Chambers's* care, with express orders from the Czar that they should be treated with the utmost civility.

The prisoners taken at *Narva* were as List of the prisoners taken. follows: Major-general Baron *Horn*, the Governor; five colonels, two lieutenant-colonels, five majors, four captains of horse, six cornets, twenty-one captains of foot, five captain-lieutenants, three quarter-masters, twenty-nine lieutenants, thirty-three ensigns, an hundred and thirty-six belonging to the artillery, and two thousand soldiers; not above an hundred killed in the attack. Of the *Russians* there were about two hundred and fifty killed; amongst whom was Colonel *Bernard*, one Major, three captains, two lieutenants and an ensign: wounded and killed from the beginning of the

**BOOK** the siege in whole, two colonels, two lieutenant-colonels, four majors, fifteen captains, eleven lieutenants, nineteen ensigns, fifty-seven under officers, and about nine hundred common soldiers, the most part of whom were only wounded and recovered.

On the 11th of *August*, Marshal *Ogilvie* caused level the approaches, and began to work at repairing the breaches.

On the 12th the Czar appointed the great church for the *Greek* service: the rest of the churches were allowed to the *Lutherans*.

The 15th was appointed for giving thanks to GOD on the taking of the town, the *Te Deum* being sung, to which succeeded bonfires, and a triple discharge of the army and garrison, beginning with the artillery, as is usual: after which, *Alexander Menzekoff* the Czar's favourite was declared general Governor of all *Ingria*; who, together with Major-general *Chambers*, was installed Knight of St. *Andrew*; an order the Czar had lately instituted in honour of that Apostle, who is patron of all *Russia*.

*Ivano-*  
*grod* sur-  
*tenders.*

On the 17th, Marshal *Ogilvie* summoned *Ivanogrod* to surrender; which place is situate opposite to *Narva*, on the other side the river. The commandant not being in condition to hold out, there being above three thousand souls within the place, (most  
part



part whereof had got into it during the Book  
siege of *Narva*) and scarcely provisions for VI.  
ten days, surrendered on the following conditions: ~~~~~

That the commandant Lieutenant-colonel *Stiernstral*, and all within the place, should be allowed (the troops with arms; but no ammunition, no drums beating, nor colours flying) to march out with a month's provisions, and to be conducted safe to *Reval*; all persons in arrest to be set at liberty. Which conditions were willingly accepted of: there was found in these two towns, an immense quantity of artillery, arms of all sorts, ammunition, and all manner of warlike stores,

In the beginning of *February* this year, an Ambassador from the *Ottoman Porte* had arrived at *Moscow*, to notify the new Sultan's accession to the throne, and to confirm the treaty of *Carlowich*, having left *Constantinople* the preceeding year, and continued most part of the winter in *Baturin*, the residence of the *Hettman* of the *Ukrain Cossacks*, both to agree several points in dispute betwixt the *Cossacks* and *Tartars*, and to settle the difference on the frontiers, betwixt them and the *Turks*; which had not been so well adjusted at the peace. As he made his publick entry into the city, a considerable body of troops, both foot and

BOOK dragons, were drawn up in a line as he  
 VI. passed; but when he came to his audience,  
 he would deliver his credentials to none but  
 into the Czar's own hand: whereupon, the  
 prime minister, *Gollowin*, caused signify to  
 him, that he was in *Moscow* what their prime  
 Visier was at *Constantinople*. After which,  
 without more words, he reached his hand  
 for the credentials, and took them gently  
 from him, asking him at the same time if  
 he had any thing further to say? he replying  
 no, was carried back to his lodgings with  
 the same formality as before. This Ambassa-  
 dor was allowed daily for his entertainment,  
 an hundred and thirty rubles; and, as the  
 Czar marched to the campaign, he desired  
 that he might be allowed to go along;  
 which being agreed to, he went the length  
 of *Novogrod*, where he continued until  
*Narva* was taken. He then obtained per-  
 mission to go to that place; into which he  
 entered on the 1st of *September*, having  
 passed along the front of the army, which  
 was drawn up (officers and soldiers) in their  
 best order, on that occasion.

Some days after, as this Ambassador was  
 entertained by the Czar at the Governor's  
 table, amongst other discourses, *Menzekoff*  
 enlarging on the valour and conduct of the  
*Rassians*, who in so short a time had taken  
 so strong a town as *Narva*, from such a  
 warlike

warlike people as the *Swedes*. The Am-Bassador replied, 'That was very true, but as there had been foreigners within the walls, so he did not doubt but there was also a good many without.' After the entertainment, he was diverted in the evening with a ball and fire-works, wherewith he seemed exceedingly pleased. On the 10th, he took his audience of leave, having received the usual presents, then returned to *Constantinople* the same way he came.

Though the Czar had made a glorious and successful campaign, where he was himself in person, yet his allies in *Lithuania*, Prince *Wisnowisky* and *Starosta Oginisky*, who had been joined the preceeding year by five thousand *Russians*, were defeated on the frontiers of *Courland* by General *Levenhaupt* and *Sapega*, where their loss amounted to near three thousand men, besides the town of *Birzin*. This obliged *Oginisky* to repair to the Czar as he lay encamped at *Narva*, to demand further succours, else they could not keep the field. The Czar desired him not to be uneasy, promising to send to their relief an army of sixty thousand *Russians*, besides *Cossacks*, to support his ally King *Augustus*. The confederacy of *Warsaw* had dethroned him, and on the 12th of July had elected *Stanislaus Leschinsky*, Woywode of *Posen*, by the instigation of

The *Russians* defeated in *Courland*,

BOOK the King of Sweden: by the by, tho' *Stanislaus* was of a considerable family in that country, yet his election was not altogether agreeable to the party who had at first joined the King of Sweden; for besides the Primate, who would neither proclaim him nor put the crown upon his head (though at the same time he was well pleased to see King *Augustus* dethroned), other great men, such as *Fineafky* the Crown-general, who had been at first engaged with the confederates at *Warsaw*, but had left them and joined those of *Sandomir* upon finding (as was alleged) that they were not to be elected themselves, I say besides these, there were others, such as the *Lubomirskies*, *Yabonskies*, *Weisnowiskies*, &c. who thought they should have been preferred to *Leschinsky*, and therefore went the more heartily into the confederacy of *Sandomir* on that account.

The Czar  
returns to  
*Moscow*.

The campaign being ended, the Czar returned to *Moscow*, where there were great rejoicings, exposing to his people the trophies of the campaign, viz. an hundred and fifty standards and colours, eighty-four brass guns, together with the prisoners, who were all well used.

About this time, General *Mydel*, who commanded in *Carelia*, undertook to disturb the works at *Cronstat* and *St. Petersburg*, but

but without other success than the loss of BOOK  
two small frigates, which Colonel *Arnsfeldt* VI.  
who commanded the *Swedes*, set fire to, and  
some few timber-houses on the island *Ra-*  
*tufary*.

Then Admiral *Ankersteern*, after having landed three or four thousand recruits at *Reval*, went (after having joined Vice-admiral *Spar*) to attack the *Russian* fleet, commanded by Vice-admiral *Kruys*, whose ships being but small and not in a condition to fight the *Swedish* large vessels, retired into shallow water, where the *Swedes* durst not advance to attack them: they only cannonaded one another at such distance, that there was but little execution done on either side. Then the *Swedes* bore up to the point of the island *Ratufary*, where they made a descent, and landed forty large flat bottomed boats full of grenadiers, &c. who were so well received by Colonel *Talbuch*, that they lost most part of their men, and were forced to retire to their ships, leaving about forty prisoners, with some few of their boats.

The Czar, after having made the necessary preparations for the ensuing campaign, being come the length of *Pleskow*, (where he reviewed the most part of his troops) ordered Marshal *Sheremetoff* to march into *Courland* at the head of fourteen thousand dragoons, 1705.

BOOK dragoons, four thousand foot, and two  
 VI. thousand *Cossacks*, in pursuit of General  
 ~~~~~ *Levenhaupt*. This General getting timely  
 intelligence of *Sheremetoff's* march, sent or-
 ders to General *Frolich* Governor of *Riga*,
 to send him with all expedition what troops
 he could spare out of the garrison. In obe-
 dience thereto, Count *Frolich* sent him one
 thousand foot; and as Marshal *Sheremetoff*
 entered *Courland*, he came to understand
 that General *Levenhaupt* had besides, caused
 march to strengthen his troops, one thou-
 sand foot more out of *Mittau*, whereby he
 judged that it was but weakly garrisoned;
 and thereupon, without loss of time, order-
 ed Major-general *Bower* with two thousand
 dragoons; to march and harass the enemy,
 or if possible, to surprize *Mittau*. *Bower*
 did it so successfully, that on the 4th of
July before break of day, he came close
 upon the said place undiscovered, and cau-
 sing six hundred dragoons dismount, attack-
 ed the town; where, having made himself
 master of one of the gates, meeting with
 little or no resistance, he marched into the
 town with his whole party, and attacked
 the enemy, (who were gathering together
 on the market-place, just got out of their
 beds) killed above fifty, took the like num-
 ber prisoners, and forced the rest to retire
 into the castle; which he not being able to
 attack,

General
Bower
 surprizes
Mittau.

attack, marched off with the prisoners, and Book
joined that day the army at a place called VI.


Miffoten, four great leagues distant from *Mittau*. General *Levenhaupt* having advice thereof, marched himself with the greatest part of his cavalry and dragoons, in hopes to come up with *Bower* before he could join the army; but it being too late, he returned to his camp, and took care next morning to draw up his army (consisting of betwixt eight and nine thousand men, most part infantry) in the most advantageous ground, and expect the enemy, who he was convinced would soon be up with him.

Marshal *Sheremetoff* being informed of his situation, called a council of war, wherein it was resolved unanimously to attack this body of the enemy, as they did not doubt of beating them, being so far superior in numbers; by which means they would become masters of the whole country. In order thereto, the Marshal set forwards next morning early, having three great leagues to march before he could come up with them; where, after having made the necessary dispositions, he ordered the *Cossacks* to attack the enemy in flank, whilst he attacked them in front.

It was past two o'clock in the afternoon before the action began; first by the cannon, as is usual; then they came to close fight, which continued for half an hour, with much

The battle of *Germuthoff*.

BOOK much bravery on both sides, until the *Cossacks* got through the morass, (which the enemy thought impracticable) and attacked them in flank according to orders, on their left, which put the *Swedes* in so great disorder that they gave way. This, no sooner General *Levenhaupt* perceived, than he caused march a body of fresh troops from his reserve, who beat off the *Cossacks* and reinforced his left-wing, renewing the battle, which continued doubtful for some time; till at last the *Swedes* on the right attacked so vigorously, that the *Russians* gave way, and the enemy made themselves masters of three of their cannon. Then Marshal *Sheremetoff* reinforcing his whole line, made so forward a push, that he forced the enemy to retire beyond their first ground, yet not so confusedly, but that they continued the battle with as much resolution as before; when a *Russian* Colonel of dragoons, eager for victory, broke in with his regiment (without orders) through an interval in the centre of the enemy, proposing to attack them in flank, right and left; whereupon, a body of the enemy's reserve attacked him so vigorously, that they beat him back, killed a great many of his men, and dangerously wounded himself. All this while the victory was undecided, and continued so till towards evening, that the *Swedish* General forming

forming his whole body in one line, made BOOK
 so vigorous an attack that he forced the VI.
Russians to their baggage, about half a 
 mile distant from the field of battle. The
 Marshal's being wounded was the occasion
 of their retreat: this battle was fought near
 to a gentleman's seat called *Gemaurthoff*, in
Courland. General *Levenhaupt* wrote to his
 master the King of *Sweden*, giving an ac-
 count of this action; that the *Russians* had
 repulsed and beat the *Swedes* twice out of
 their ground, though they had fought with
 all imaginable bravery, and, had they not
 been superior to the enemy in infantry, they
 had been undone; therefore begged his
 majesty to send him a strong and speedy re-
 inforcement, otherways he would not be
 able to keep the field, the enemy exceed-
 ing him so far in horse.

Amongst the killed on the *Swedish* side,
 were Colonel *Horn*, three Lieutenant-colon-
 nels, *Coulbars*, *Tankward* and *Lindenshiold*,
 Major *Wrangle*, together with several cap-
 tains and subalterns: amongst the wounded
 were two colonels, *Korge*, and *Stakelberg*,
 Major *Wiberberg*, and many officers of in-
 ferior rank, with above three thousand sol-
 diers killed and wounded.

The *Russians* sustained greater loss than
 the *Swedes*, having about thirty officers
 killed, and near to that number wounded,

BOOK with about four thousand nine hundred soldiers killed and wounded. This battle continued near to five hours, General *Levenhaupt* not daring to advance too far on the enemy for fear of being surrounded, was obliged to maintain his ground the best way he could. After the battle, in the night he retired towards *Riga*, not being able to stand an attack next day, if the *Russians* had designed it.

The Czar was well enough pleased when he got the account of this battle; and, finding the loss near equal, said, 'he was always able to spare two to one at least, if not three.' The Czar being at *Vilna*, the metropolis of *Lithuania*, with an army of sixty thousand men, great numbers of the *Polish* senators of *Augustus's* party repaired to him, admiring to see so fine an army and so well disciplined in so short a time. Here he published a manifesto, inviting all true *Poles* who had the interest of their country at heart, to adhere and continue firm to their true King, threatening ruin and destruction to those who adhered to the King of *Sweden*, and his King *Stanislaus*; declaring that he would assist, protect, and defend King *Augustus* against all his opposers, with all his power; and also preserve the rights and privileges of the republic.

The Czar
issues a
manifesto
in behalf
of King
Augustus.

The Czar had this year in *Poland* and *Gourland* three armies; Marshal *Sheremetoff*,
with

with a body of twenty thousand foot and dragoons, besides *Cossacks* in *Courland*; the army where he was himself in person, consisted of about sixty thousand, commanded by Marshal *Ogilvie*; and in *Black Russia* sixty thousand *Cossacks*, commanded by their *Hettman*, *Mazepa*; whom the Czar had lately honoured with the order of St. *Andrew*, though at the same time he was contriving all the mischief he could against him, but durst not as yet show it openly; though I believe, it had been a more proper occasion than when he did it: the Czar being with his greatest force in *Lithuania*, and Marshal *Sheremetoff* at a still greater distance; so that *Mazepa* with the greatest ease imaginable might have joined the King of *Sweden*. And here was a noble occasion for this brave young Prince to have entered *Russia*; for he might have marched to the city of *Moscow* without meeting with any opposition, and forced the Czar into his own terms, having an army of forty thousand national *Swedes* in *Poland*, which was enough to have rent that great empire in pieces; especially in conjunction with the *Cossacks*, who would have furnished provisions for his army and themselves too. In this event, the Czar must have abandoned all his designs in *Poland*, and on the *Swedish* frontiers, and marched with his whole

BOOK force to defend his own country: and I am

VI. convinced, he would have gone into any terms the King of *Sweden* could have proposed, rather than have risked a battle; which would have been putting all to stake. But this virtuous and brave young Prince, who was certainly endued with many great qualities (none that ever wore a crown having had more real honour, nor a greater regard to his word), unfortunately for him, could never take advice, no, not in the worst of events: for, from the moment he set out from *Stockholm*, to his dying-hour he never called a council of war, but altogether followed his own ideas, without communicating them to any till they were just to be put in execution. He and his generals did noble exploits indeed, but none of them would ever venture to offer him advice: his greatest favourites were those who blindly obeyed his commands; which they did to the last, regarding them as oracles. Only Baron *Gorts* got his confidence, into whose hands he gave himself up entirely, when too late; but, if his unfortunate death had not happened at *Fredericshall*, who knows how far he might have retrieved his affairs? *Norway* had been worth all the countries the Czar had taken from him; and what further might he not have done?

After

After the battle of *Gemaurthoff*; (where Book General *Levenhaupt* surely kept the field, VI. though his retreat towards *Riga* shewed evidently that he was no longer able to act offensively) the *Russians* did what they pleased over all *Courland*; but the Czar Courland at the discretion of the Russians. thought fit to take that dutchy under his protection, only ordaining the inhabitants to deliver up to his commissary *Alexander Menzekoff*, all the arms and effects they had belonging to the *Swedes*; which order was with some difficulty complied with.

The King of *Sweden* all this while continued with great tranquillity in his camp at *Blenie*, undervaluing his enemies, and only taken up with his trifling design of seeing King *Stanislaus* crowned, neglecting the finest opportunity that ever Prince had. The King of Sweden how employed.

Admiral *Ankerstiern*, who had made a fruitless attempt the former year on *Cronstot*, finding the Czar's force mostly employed in *Courland* and *Lithuania*; made a second attempt this year, but with as little success as before, having landed about eight hundred men on the island *Ratusary*, who were repulsed by Colonel *Tolbut* with the loss of near half their party. At the same time, Major-general *Mydel* having advice of the Admiral's enterprize, advanced with his whole body, consisting of about four thousand men, and made an attack on *Petersburgh*, Fruitless attempts against Petersburgh.

Book *burgh*, but was so warmly received by Major-general *Robert Bruce*, that he was beat off with the loss of three hundred of his men: after which, he attacked a mill (where were four hundred *Russians* commanded by a Lieutenant-colonel) fortified only with a breast-work doubly pallisadoed, but was repulsed here also with the loss of two hundred men. Major-general *Bruce* marching out of the garrison with a body of six thousand *Russians*, ready to fall upon him, he thought fit to repair to *Wiburgh*. The *Russians* did not lose in all these encounters above seventy men.

In *Courland*, matters succeeded no worse: Lieutenant-general *Renn* attacked and made himself master of *Bautsk*, and of the town of *Mittau*, but the castle did not surrender without a siege; which last, after the *Russians* had thrown in an hundred and fifty bombs, and made a sufficient breach with the cannon, Colonel *Knoring* the *Swedish* commandant, gave up on the 4th of *September*, upon honourable conditions.

The castle
of *Mittau*
surren-
ders.

After this, the Czar became master of all *Courland* and *Semigal*, without the King of *Sweden*'s endeavouring in the least to preserve these countries, being wholly taken up with the deliberations of the dyet of *Warsaw*; which the Czar endeavoured to perplex as far as he could. Having ordered
Major-

Major-general *Bower* to command in Cour-
land, and Marshal *Sheremetoff* in *Livonia*, VI.
 he marched himself towards *Grodno*, which
 place he caused fortify; as also *Tycozin*,
 where he established magazines with provi-
 sions of all kinds. His party gained several
 advantages over the *Swedes* and *Stanis-*
lautes, and took possession of several advan-
 tageous posts towards *Warsaw*; by which
 means he became master of all *Lithuania*;
 which occasioned the confederacy of *War-*
saw falsely to give out that the Czar design-
 ed to annex these countries to the *Russian*
 empire, endeavouring thereby to draw off
 the senators from the confederacy of *Sando-*
mir, to join them, and to stand (as they
 expressed it) in defence of their country,
 against the invaders of it.

The Czar
 master of
Lithua-
nia.

The *Cossacks* under their *Hettman*, *Ma-*
zepa, who by this time was in good un-
 derstanding with the King of *Sweden*, took
 possession of *Zamoise*, &c.

King *Augustus* had got together in *Saxo-*
ny, an army of about twelve thousand men;
 but judging it impracticable to march them
 into *Poland*, he left *Dresden* incognito, ac-
 companied only by three persons, and passed
 through *Dantzick* about the end of *October*;
 thence by the *Frischaff* to *Koningsberg*, and
 from thence to *Tycozin*, an advantageous
 post occupied by the *Russians*. On his ar-
 rival

BOOK rival, he not only wrote to the Czar, but

VI. also to all in his interest: from *Tycozin*, he
 ~~~~~  
 King *Augustus* went to *Grodno*, and from that to the *Rus-*  
 meets the him. After the usual compliments, his  
 Czar. Czarish majesty presented the King with six

standards, being a part of thirteen, the *Russians* had taken from the *Swedes* at the bridge of *Praog* on the *Vistula*.

King *Augustus* a little after his arrival instituted the order of the white eagle, which he conferred on several of the senators and some *Russian* generals, particularly Marshal *Ogilvie* and *Alexander Menzekoff*, the Czar's favourites; and having some days before observed the *Russian* army, and being not a little surprized, to find them so thoroughly disciplined and well commanded, he proposed to the Czar to march with their joint forces and attack the King of *Sweden*; but the weather proving so bad by so great a fall of snow, that neither infantry nor dragoons were able to keep the field, they were obliged to defer the design, and march back to take up their winter-quarters in and about *Grodno* and *Tycozin*.

Soon after, a great council of the *Polish* senators met at *Grodno*, at which the Czar and King *Augustus* assisted. The day after, the Vice-chancellor *Shemberk* opened the council for the King, who was seconded by

A council  
at *Grodno*.



by the Marshal of the confederates, in name Book  
of the republic: after which they adjourn- VI.  
ed for some days expecting more of the se-  
nators. In a few days the Crown-general  
together with several senators more arrived,  
having sent before some *Swedish* prisoners,  
with a good many of *Starrosta Spitsky's*  
troops he had taken near *Cracow*.

That day he arrived, the conferences with  
the Czar's ministers commenced; in which the  
four following points were proposed, in or-  
der to enter into an alliance: for though  
the Czar and King *Augustus* had made an  
alliance some time before, whereto some  
few *Polish* senators consented, yet it was  
not thought sufficient, being not done in a  
full dyet.

The first article was, That the Czar  
should evacuate, and give up to the repu-  
blic, all the towns and forts he had taken  
during the war in the *Polish Ukraine*.

*Secondly*, That he should also evacuate  
and give up to the republic, all the places  
of strength in *Livonia* he had already made  
himself master of, or should, during the  
continuance of the war.

*Thirdly*, That his Czarish majesty should  
allow the free exercise of the *Romish* religi-  
on in *Moscow*, and over all the *Russian* em-  
pire.

BOOK *Fourthly*, That the two millions of six-  
 VI. dollars, should be payed to help to defray  
 the charges of the army, which the Czar  
 himself had often promised.

Hereupon, the Czar's ministers declared themselves as follows: *First*, That the Czar should restore to the republic, the towns and forts he had taken in the *Ukraine* during the war, particularly *Bieloezirkow*.

*Secondly*, That the towns he had already taken, or should take in *Livonia*, should also be restored to the republic; but, that during the course of the war, they should be garrisoned, half by *Russians*, half by *Poles*.

*Thirdly*, That so long as the war continued, he would assist the republic with men, and money wherewith to pay their troops.

*Fourthly*, That over his whole dominions, the *Romish* religion should not only be tolerated, but that forthwith, a capuchin church and convent should be built on his own proper charges, under the patronage of *St. Peter*.

The King, together with the senators, were satisfied with this declaration; so that on the 11th of *December*, the alliance offensive and defensive betwixt *Russia* and *Poland*, was confirmed and ratified in a full dyet.

On

On the 12th, the Czar having advice sent him of a revolt in and about *Astracan*, he set out for *Moscow*, accompanied by his favourite *Alexander Menzekoff*, and escorted by his guards, together with ten thousand dragoons, who were to be quartered in and about *Smolensko*, on the frontiers of *Poland*, leaving the command of his army to King *Augustus* and Marshal *Ogilvie*.

VI.  
A revolt  
at *Astracan*.

Major-general *Bower* who commanded in *Courland*, having intelligence that a party of the enemy had taken up their quarters about *Cobersthanie*, marched in the night with fifteen hundred dragoons, fell upon them in the morning, beat up their quarters, killed several, and then returned to *Mittau* with an hundred and forty prisoners.

The King of *Sweden* notwithstanding the rigour of the season, after having caused crown King *Stanislaus*, and made an alliance defensive and offensive, with him and the confederates of *Warsaw*, which he looked upon now as the republic, having intelligence that the Czar had carried off with him a considerable body of his troops; and that the rest of the army were dispersed at some distance in their quarters; was induced to march with the greatest part of his forces to pass the *Vistula*, and so forward, fully resolving to beat up the *Russian* and

BOOK *Saxon* quarters, and as he imagined, to give

VI. them a total overthrow. But having advanced as far as *Tycozin*, which he found better fortified and garrisoned than he had believed, he seemed resolved on his arrival to have attacked the said place, and caused his troops provide fascines to that end; but on second thoughts, he took to the right, marched through woods and forests straight upon *Grodno*, with design to attack the greatest force of the enemy first, and then return upon the rest.

The King of Sweden thinks to surprize his enemies.

King *Augustus* having early intelligence of the *Swedish* King's march, ordered all the troops that were quartered in the towns and villages round, to repair forthwith to *Grodno*; where, they not only entrenched themselves strongly, but took care to provide themselves with sufficiency of provisions and forage; so that they seemed to be in no great pain about him: Lieutenant-colonel *Fylen*, with two hundred of the guards keeping always in sight of the enemy's advanced troops, gave King *Augustus* constant intelligence, until the 24th in the night that he entered the *Russian* camp, bringing accounts of the enemy's being at hand.

King *Augustus* gets intelligence.

1706

The 25th of *January* his *Polish* majesty, accompanied by Marshal *Ogilvie*, passed alongst the front of the lines, and by nine o'clock

o'clock in the morning had the enemy full Book  
 in their view, formed in two lines, under VI.  
 the *Jesuit's* wood, where the King of *Sweden* continued above an hour observing the  
 disposition of his enemies; after which, he  
 endeavoured to cross the river *Niemen*,  
 which not appearing practicable at that  
 place, he thought fit to march a league fur-  
 ther down, where he found a more con-  
 venient passage. Lieutenant-general *Renn*  
 was so lucky as to cross the river with his  
 dragoons a little way above, and came very op-  
 portunely into the camp, King *Augustus* and  
 the Marshal being in pain lest he should have  
 been cut off by the enemy. By this time, the  
 whole army were got into the lines, except  
 the garrison of *Tycozin*, consisting of three  
 thousand foot and two hundred dragoons,  
 commanded by Major-general *Deduith*.

The King of *Sweden* having crossed the  
*Niemen* at *Korhanova*, marched on the 26th  
 up before the lines of *Grodno*, where he  
 drew up his army about eleven o'clock, ap-  
 pearing as if he designed to attack them.  
 King *Augustus* and Marshal *Ogilvie* had all  
 well disposed and ready to receive him, the  
 King moving about amongst the battallions  
 and squadrons, encouraged them to do their  
 duty, letting them know at the same time,  
 there was no retreating, so that they must  
 either fight or perish.

The

**BOOK VI.** The King of *Sweden*, brave as he was, finding the *Russians* and *Saxons* so strongly entrenched and advantageously posted, would not risk the attack, but marched off by four of the clock afternoon.

The King  
of *Sweden*  
retires.

As soon as the King and Marshal *Ogilvie* perceived that the enemy had marched off, they ordered four thousand dragoons, together with all the *Cossacks* under Lieutenant-general *Renn*'s command, to fall upon their rear, which they did, and returned to the camp before night, with twenty-eight prisoners and a good deal of baggage: after which, Marshal *Ogilvie* caused strengthen the fortifications both of the town and camp; so that in a few days, he wished for nothing more than to be attacked by the enemy. A *Swedish* Lieutenant who had been taken by the *Cossacks* on the night of the 26th, as he was interrogated by the Marshal, told that he had heard the King his master say, he did not believe the *Russians* would have stood his coming up; but this magnanimous young Prince was much mistaken, for these were no more the *Russians* he had formerly dealt with at *Narva*, being become much better soldiers, and by far better commanded. It was no small surprize to many, that the King of *Sweden* did not attack the lines on this occasion: it was however the only time he ever came up with

with his enemies with a view to attack them, without doing it.

Book VI.

Marshal *Ogilvie* getting intelligence that a great part of the enemy's baggage, was going under a slight convoy to *Hoza*, pursuing the rout towards *Wilna*, ordered Major-general *Slough* with two thousand dragoons to fall upon them. He came up with the enemy, but found a superior body of *Swedish* infantry, which he did not think fit to venture upon, and so retreated in all haste. The Woywode of *Kiow*, *Potosky*, made after him with his *Polish* cavalry, but *Slough* seeing himself out of the reach of the *Swedish* infantry, faced about with his dragoons, attacked and repulsed the Woywode, killed above one hundred *Poles*, and brought forty prisoners into the camp; amongst whom was a Captain of horse, who declared that it was the common opinion, that since the King of *Sweden* had not been able to carry his point at *Grodno*, he designed to march his fatigued army into quarters to be refreshed, before he could undertake any thing further.

On the 29th, another party of Lieutenant-general *Renn*'s command, after the enemy had marched from *Korhanova*, fell in with *Stanislaus*'s baggage, took all his plate, kitchen utensils, &c. together with the King of *Sweden*'s medicine chests: two hundred  
*Swedes*

BOOK *Swedes* who guarded the same, were beat,  
 VI. with the loss of twenty-four men killed, and  
 ~~~~~ eight taken prisoners. To confirm what  
 has been here said, the following letter
 writ by Marshal *Ogilvie* will be of use.

Marshal
Ogilvie's
 letter.

‘ I did indeed with pleasure, expect to
 ‘ have had an action with the enemy; for
 ‘ the King of *Sweden* on the 25th current
 ‘ crossed the *Mienen*, a league distant from
 ‘ my camp; and on the 26th, his whole
 ‘ army, infantry and cavalry, (provided
 ‘ with fascines in order to attack us) consist-
 ‘ ing of twenty-two battallions of foot, and
 ‘ thirty two squadrons of horse and dra-
 ‘ goons, *Swedish* troops; together with
 ‘ ten thousand *Poles*, adherents to *Stani-*
 ‘ *slaus*, marched, and drew up in order of
 ‘ battle along the front of my camp with-
 ‘ in cannon-shot of the left; but as he
 ‘ found us disposed, and ready to receive
 ‘ him, after having observed us some hours,
 ‘ he marched the same day back the way he
 ‘ came, repassed the *Mienen*, and continued
 ‘ his march towards *Merrez*, and probably
 ‘ from thence, either to *Wilna*, *Samoicia* or
 ‘ *Courland*, which will soon appear: and,
 ‘ though I have been these several months in-
 ‘ camped in this situation, provisions have held
 ‘ out hitherto. In the mean time, I have
 ‘ thought it adviseable to evacuate *Courland*
 ‘ for a while, leaving only some few troops
 ‘ in

' in the castle of *Mittau*; and being now B o o k
 ' no ways apprehensive of any further at- VI.
 ' tempt from the enemy, have ordered a ~~~~~
 ' body of *Russian* dragoons to march with
 ' King *Augustus*, together with all the *Sa-*
 ' *xon* and *Polish* troops at this place, into
 ' great *Poland*, (it being mostly evacuated
 ' by the enemy) the better to pursue the
 ' concerted measures for the ensuing cam-
 ' paign. I cannot enough commend the
 ' resolution and bravery of my *Russi-*
 ' *ans*; and do confidently affirm, that if
 ' this attack had gone on, nothing could
 ' have happened more for the advantage
 ' of both their Czarish and *Polish* maje-
 ' sties: for it could not have ended, by the
 ' help of G o d, but in the total defeat of
 ' the enemy, with no great loss to us. The
 ' prisoners who have been from time to
 ' time brought into this place, look so mi-
 ' serably, through hunger and fatigue, as is
 ' not to be described; and if the enemy
 ' continue any time longer marching about
 ' in this manner, their army cannot be but
 ' exceedingly weakened.'

After the King of *Sweden* had marched
 from *Grodno*, a council of war was held,
 wherein it was resolved that Marshal *Ogil-*
vie with General *Allart*, should continue
 at that place with the greatest part of the
 army, who together with the great Gene-

BOOK *ral of Lithuania, Prince Wiesnowitsky, might*

VI. act as they saw occasion; that King *Augustus* should march with all expedition into great *Poland* with his *Saxon* and *Polish* troops, together with a body of six thousand *Russian* dragoons, and at the same time send orders to General *Shullembourg*, to march and join them with all the *Saxon* troops, which would enable King *Augustus* to fall upon General *Renshild*; and within less than six weeks to return to *Grodno*, where his Czarish majesty would also be, to concert measures, no longer to act defensively, but to march and attack the enemies where-ever they could come up with them.

Renshild
defeats
Shullem-
bourg.

Accordingly, the King of *Poland* with his drabants and troops above-mentioned, marched into great *Poland*; but General *Shullembourg*, after he had left *Saxony* and crossed the *Oder*, pursuing his march through *Poland*, in order to join the King his master, being attacked and overthrown by General *Renshild* at *Frauenstadt*, this disconcerted all their measures.

Nevertheless, the *Russian* army under the command of Marshal *Ogilvie* continued close at *Grodno*, and had frequent encounters with the enemy, by commanded parties, as will appear by this other letter.

Marshal
Ogilvie's

‘ The enemy in this winter-campaign,
‘ having sufficiently fatigued themselves
‘ without

without being able to effectuate their de-
 signs, have now resolved to pass some
 time in their quarters, as I resolve to do
 in mine, seeing the present juncture does
 not invite to any other thing, than that I
 continue in *statu quo*; that his Czarish
 majesty by this means may have time and
 opportunity to assemble his forces about
Smslensko, to the end that being all got
 together, he may be in condition to at-
 tack the enemy's greatest force, notwith-
 standing the loss the *Saxon* and *Russian* in-
 fantry sustained at *Fravenstadt*; and
 which was entirely owing to the treachery
 of the *French* and *Bavarians*, who on the
 approach of the *Swedes* threw down their
 arms without striking a stroke, and yield-
 ed to the enemy; upon which, they were
 forthwith received into their service, ha-
 ving previous to the action corresponded
 with them to that effect. After this man-
 ner, the King of *Sweden* may well be-
 come victorious, seeing he meets with no
 resistance, the troops he attacks not stand-
 ing to their defence, but rather allowing
 themselves to be massacred, as some part
 of that army did. I live in good hopes
 that the troops under my command, will
 take example at the unfortunate event at
Fravenstadt, and rather stand to it like
 men, than after having submitted and

BOOK VI. *quarters given, to be barbarously cut to pieces: an unconceivable politic! for, hodie mihi cras tibi may always be expected. After all, I continue in my camp, where I am resolved with great composure to expect the enemy: at the same time I send daily out parties, and have reinforced Prince Wiesnowitsky with a body of two thousand dragoons, commanded by General Bower, and have this minute accounts that this General has beat a party of the enemy, whereof I hourly expect the particulars. I am also informed, that Major-general Slough has beat the Woywode of Kiow, and pursued him upwards of thirteen miles; so it appears that the Swedes do not play the master every where.'*

But because so great an army as lay entrenched at *Grodno* could not act with that forwardness as might be expected, and that the King of *Sweden* would not attack them in that part, the Czar sent orders to the Marshal to demolish the fortifications at *Grodno*, and to sink what guns he could not carry off, then to direct his march towards the frontiers of *Russia*. The Marshal's letter will give the best account thereof.

Marshal
Ogilvie's
third letter.

'After several couriers had brought his Czarish majesty's orders to break up from *Grodno*, and direct my march towards the *Russian* frontiers, I ordered off all the prisoners

soners, sick and wounded, towards *Tycozin* and *Beroza*; and at the same time, caused carry into my camp some thousands of pallisadoes, together with a considerable quantity of gabions and fascines, as if I had had a mind to fortify the lines still more, and no intention to remove. I also caused bring into the camp a good deal of provisions, and in short, made preparations as if I designed to expect the often threatened attack of the enemy. On the 4th of *April*, I caused double the out-guards, ordering them not to allow any person whatsoever to go out or come into the camp or town, without an order from me. Then on the 7th, I commanded off all the artillery, ammunition, the whole baggage and necessary provisions towards *Tycozin*, covered by Lieutenant-general *Renn*, with a body of four thousand dragoons, and at the same time caused carry a vast quantity of forage into the camp, which the enemy, as also the country, imagined to be a general foraging. Then on the 9th, I marched with the whole army, leaving only the out-guards, which were to continue till the third day after, keeping up fires in the camp as if the army had been still there. On the 12th, the out-guards marched, after having set fire to the pallisadoes, and destroyed all that could be of use to the enemy, leaving no bridge behind

Book VI. behind them: all which being done, they were to continue in the rear, and send me what accounts they could learn of the enemy; I having some days before sent orders to the garrison of *Tycozin* to march and join us, after having demolished the fortifications thereof.

After this retreat, Marshal *Ogilvie* marched without seeing an enemy, till he came to the frontiers of *Russia*, where he was joined by Prince *Menzekoff*, who had marched from *Smolensko*, and stood encamped betwixt *Mohilow* and *Borrisow* with a body of ten thousand dragoons.

Alexander Menzekoff was in the end of last year dignified with the title of Prince of the *Roman* empire, he being the Czar's principal favourite. By means of bribes and compliments to the courtiers at *Vienna*, he got out his diploma without examining narrowly into his genealogy.

After King *Augustus* had marched from *Grodno*, and the loss of the battle of *Frauenstadt*, he gave up all hopes of further success; and as he had been tampering some years before to make a separate peace with the King of *Sweden*, tho' without success, he was now determined to have peace let the conditions be never so hard: but before he proceeded further, he sent orders to *Dresden* to arrest the Czar's General and plenipotentiary,

Augustus resolves to make a separate peace.

plenipotentiary, *Patcul*, lest he should get the wind of his designs, being a person of vast penetration and abilities. This obliged the Czar's commissary at *Dresden*, Prince *Galitzin*, to enter a protestation against King *Augustus* and the ministers, for such a violation of the rights of sovereigns. Every body knows what noise this imprisonment made in *Europe*, and the hard fate and ignominious death this unfortunate gentleman met with, which make the worst parts of the King of *Sweden's* story.

Book VI.
Causes arrest *Patcul*.

The Czar in the beginning of *April* (1706) went on board his fleet, consisting of twelve men of war, ten brigantines, ten great gallies, ten bomb-gallies, ten branders, and fifty small gallies; all lying near the island *Ratusary*, where he expected to have been attacked by the enemy's fleet, which lay before *Reval*, consisting of two men of war, commanded by Admiral *Ankerstiern*; which not happening, his majesty sailed to *St. Petersburg* on board of a light frigate. Then after having given the necessary directions for advancing his works at that place, he took journey for *Smolensko*, where he arrived the 29th: from *Smolensko* he went to *Mohilow*, and reviewed his army, which lay encamped there, and increased daily.

End of the Sixth Book.



T H E
H I S T O R Y
O F
P E T E R the G R E A T,
E M P E R O R of R U S S I A.

B O O K VII.

THE King of *Sweden* not willing to hazard his army before the lines at *Grodno* as he first designed, altered his measures entirely; and considering the victory his troops had obtained at *Fravenstadt* opened a door to him into *Saxony*, after being joined by General *Renschild*, he marched directly into that country, leaving only in *Poland* about six thousand *Swedes*, commanded by General *Marderfelt*, together with fifteen thousand *Poles* and *Lithuanians*, commanded by the Woywode of *Kiow* and *Sapega*.

BOOK
VII.

The King
of Sweden
enters
Saxony.

BOOK VII. As soon as the Czar had the accounts that the King of *Sweden* had entered *Saxony*, and had left such a small number of *Swedes* in *Poland*, he detached forthwith Prince *Menzekoff* with a body of ten thousand *Russians*, besides *Cossacks*, who having joined King *Augustus* at *Peterkaw*, (where he lay encamped with a body of five thousand *Saxons* and eight thousand *Poles*, commanded by the Crown-general, *Fineasky*) a council of war was held, wherein it was resolved to give battle to the enemy: but King *Augustus* considering that the King of *Sweden* was in the heart of his country, besides the terms they were privately under, seemed not so very forward for it as might have been expected; it carried however in the affirmative. After which the Crown-general, together with General *Brant*, marched with the *Poles* towards the enemy: King *Augustus* and Prince *Menzekoff* followed after with the *Russian* and *Saxon* troops, and joined the Crown-general at *Seestadt*, within two leagues of *Calish*. Next day the army rested, where they had intelligence that the enemy were encamped, and advantageously posted near to the river *Arsona*, on the other side of the town, and were resolved to stand the attack. King *Augustus* had indeed given private notice to the *Swedish* General not to wait their coming up, letting him

him at the same time into some part of his Book
 designs: but General *Marderfelt* had no re- VII.
 gard to it. *Augustus* therefore with some
 of the generals went to view the enemy,
 the *Cossacks* and *Calmucks* who had followed
 Prince *Menzekoff* marching close up to their
 camp, where they pickered a little with the
Poles. Then the whole army advanced
 within half a league of the enemy, having
 a bridge to pass, which took them up the
 rest of that day. The next day, they
 marched in order of battle straight upon the
 enemy's front: the signal of the attack was
 the firing of three guns, which the enemy
 answered with two. Their body was com-
 manded by General *Marderfelt*: the right-
 wing (consisting of *Poles*) was commanded
 by the Woywode of *Kiow*, the left (con-
 sisting of *Lithuanians*) by Count *Sapega*: the
Polish army was commanded by King *Au-*
gustus, who took his post on the left, Prince
Menzekoff on the right, and General *Brant*
 in the centre; the whole first line being
 composed of *Russians* and *Saxons*; the se-
 cond who were all *Poles*, was commanded
 by the Crown-general *Fineusky*.

About three in the afternoon the battle
 went so successfully on, that in less than
 half an hour, the right-wing of the *Swedes*
 was so roughly handled, that they were
 forced to retire behind their waggons: the

BOOK body stood it till near six o'clock, (well
 VII. fought on both sides) but of the *Swedes*,
 not above three thousand were left alive: on
 the left, twenty standards submitted to
 King *Augustus* without striking a stroke,
 the rest that stood were cut to pieces, or
 taken prisoners: the Woywode of *Kiorw* and
Sapega got off in the evening, accompanied
 but by few. In this action were taken a-
 bout an hundred standards and colours, all
 the artillery, ammunition and baggage, con-
 sisting of about six thousand waggons. Ge-
 neral *Marderfelt* having posted a Major
 with three hundred *Swedes* in the town, sur-
 rendered also next day at discretion, with
 some hundreds more, who had retired du-
 ring the engagement.

Amongst the prisoners, besides the com-
 manding General, were four *Swedish* colo-
 nels, five lieutenant-colonels, upwards of
 thirty-five majors, captains and subalterns in
 proportion. The *Swedish* prisoners amount-
 ed in whole to two thousand nine hundred
 and six, besides wounded; the killed near to
 two thousand.

The *Russians* and *Saxons* had near to
 three thousand men killed and wounded.

King *Augustus* sent all the *Polish* priso-
 ners to the Crown-general, who let them
 all go free, on promise never to take arms
 thereafter against the King and republic;
 he

he also released General *Marderfelt*, on giving his parole that General *Adam Weid* VII, should be exchanged for him: he was a favourite of Prince *Menzekoff's*, and had been detained prisoner at the first affair of *Narva*.

The Czar when he got the accounts of this victory was so well pleased, that he gratified the generals with his picture set with diamonds; the colonels and lieutenant-colonels with a medal in gold, (his effigies) set also with diamonds, and suitable presents to all the rest.

Prince *Menzekoff* after this victory, proposed to *Augustus* to march into *Saxony* with their victorious troops, and attack the King of *Sweden*, in his own country, where all his faithful subjects would infallibly join them: the King replied, that they were not strong enough for such an enterprize; the Prince said as for that, he would write to the Czar, who upon so good a design would enter into *Poland* with an army of sixty thousand men: but the King had other views, his thoughts being wholly taken up in procuring the best conditions for himself he could. The generals, *Brant* and *Renn*, seconded Prince *Menzekoff* in this proposal, but nothing could prevail with the King to undertake it; for besides the risk of being defeated, he thought the carrying such a numerous

BOOK numerous army into *Saxony* would entirely ruin the country, so that he judged how-
 VII. ever hard the King of *Sweden*'s terms might be, he would still thereby save his hereditary dominions, which he thought preferable to the uncertainty of the war.

King *Augustus* had before the battle of *Calish*, given full power to his two commissaries, Baron *D'Imhoff* and Mons. *Finsten* to treat with the King of *Sweden*, and conclude a peace on what conditions he would, even to renounce the crown in favours of King *Stanislaus*. These plenipotentiaries were so diligent, that having received their powers at *Novogrodek* on the 16th of *August*, a treaty was concluded on the 25th of *September* following at *Altranstadt*, near to *Liepstick*, (where the King of *Sweden* had his quarters) on very few articles: the chief was, his renouncing for ever the crown of *Poland* in favours of *Stanislaus*, which was of itself null; for by the laws of the country, no King of *Poland* can renounce the crown in favours of any who is not unanimously chosen by the republic.

King *Augustus* makes a dishonourable peace with the King of *Sweden* at *Altranstadt*.

It is easy to judge whether the Czar had reason to be pleased with this treaty, wherein King *Augustus* had not only renounced the crown, and acknowledged King *Stanislaus*, but given up his alliance with the Czar, obliging himself never to give him assistance

assistance in any event; likewise, to deliver Book
 up to the King of *Sweden*, his General and VII.
 plenipotentiary Mr. *Patcul*. But what did ~~~~~
 this peace advantage King *Augustus*? It
 did not better his situation in any shape:
 the King of *Sweden* continued still in *Sa-*
xony, raising exorbitant contributions, be-
 sides the having his army subsisted; so that
 it rendered his situation more deplorable
 than ever, which he acknowledged himself
 some time after to the States-general, in a
 letter. What he wrote to *Stanislaus* by
 the King of *Sweden*'s orders, must have
 been much against the grain with him.
 His letter and *Stanislaus*'s answer are cu-
 riosities in their kind.

King AUGUSTUS's LETTER to King STANISLAUS.

SIR and BROTHER,

‘ AS I am obliged to have a regard to
 ‘ the King of *Sweden*'s desire, I can-
 ‘ not shun congratulating your majesty upon
 ‘ your getting the crown, tho’ perhaps the
 ‘ advantageous treaty which that King has
 ‘ lately concluded for your majesty, might
 ‘ have excused me from this correspondence:
 ‘ however,

BOOK ' however, I do congratulate your majesty,
 VII. ' beseeching GOD, that your subjects may
 ~~~~~ ' be more faithful to you than they have  
 ' been to me.'

AUGUSTUS KING.

*Liepſick, April*  
*8th 1707.*

STANISLAUS's Answer.

SIR and BROTHER,

' THE correspondence with your ma-  
 ' jesty is a fresh obligation I owe to  
 ' the King of *Sweden*. I have a due sense  
 ' of the compliments you make me upon  
 ' my coming to the throne; and I hope  
 ' my subjects shall have no ground to fail  
 ' in their fidelity to me, as I shall observe  
 ' the laws of the kingdom.'

STANISLAUS King of POLAND.

The Czar, by this unfaithful step of his ally, was obliged to alter his measures entirely. *Narva* was by this time well fortified, as also *Sz. Petersburg* and *Cronſtat*; so that he was in no pain about what his enemy



enemy could attempt on that quarter, tho' B o o k  
 the *Swedish* Admiral advanced with his VII.  
 fleet, and lay at anchor before *Ratusary*,  
 but without offering to land any troops.  
 General *Meydel* too, in concert with the  
 Admiral, marched with a body of five thou-  
 sand men towards St. *Petersburgh*, which  
 obliged the Czar (though too late in the  
 season) to besiege *Wiburgh*, the capital of  
*Carelia*, by taking of which, he would re-  
 move his enemy to a greater distance. The  
 High-admiral *Appraxis*, therefore, having <sup>The Rus-</sup>  
 under his command eighteen thousand foot <sup>sians be-</sup>  
 and dragoons, invested it in the month of <sup>siege Wi-</sup>  
*October*, but without success, the *Swedish*  
 General having provided the place with all  
 things necessary for a good defence, be-  
 sides, having the sea open; so that the Ad-  
 miral after having thrown in more than  
 a thousand bombs into the town, abandoned  
 the siege for that time, and returned to St. <sup>but with-</sup>  
*Petersburgh*. The *Swedish* Governor, Ma- <sup>out suc-</sup>  
 jor-general *Lubekir*, as the *Russians* retired, <sup>cess.</sup>  
 ordered out a party of foot and horse to  
 beat up their rear, but without effect, never  
 daring to advance within cannon-shot of  
 them, they made their retreat in so good  
 order.

The Czar was all this while with his  
 army, commanded by Marshal *Ogilvie*, on  
 the confines of *Poland*; whence he wrote a

BOOK letter to the republic, desiring them not to  
 VII. be discouraged, for, tho' their King had  
 ~~~~~ abandoned them, he would protect and defend them, not only against their common enemy the King of *Sweden*, but against all others: exhorting them never to submit to, nor acknowledge *Stanislaus* for their King. Whereupon the Primate, together with many of the chief senators, who were most of them *Augustus's* creatures, answered the Czar's letter in a most submissive manner, acknowledging the great honour and favour he did them in taking the republic under his protection; that they would adhere firmly to their late alliance, and never abandon him, nor acknowledge *Stanislaus* King of *Poland*, no, not in the worst of events. After which, the Czar met with several of the senators at *Zolkiow*, where he renewed what he had promised in his letter by word of mouth, and they the same to him; where-with both parties seemed satisfied. But he being exceedingly picqued against King *Augustus*, first, for making a separate peace without his knowledge; and in the second place, for delivering up to the common enemy his General and Ambassador Mr. *Patcul*; he wanted above all things to have an interregnum declared, and that the Primate, as is customary, should manage matters until affairs cleared up; which (he said)  
 he

he hoped, by GOD's assistance, would very soon happen to the great advantage of the republic: and at the same time, he proposed they should declare both King *Augustus* and *Stanislaus* for ever incapable of possessing the throne. All the senators present went frankly into the proposal, yet would take nothing on them being so few, but remitted the whole to the council of *Limberg*; where most of the senators met in the month of *February* 1707. About this time, Prince *Wiesnowitsky* Great-general of *Lithuania*, declared for *Stanislaus*, on promise of succeeding to the command of Great-general after Count *Sapega*'s death: he joined General *Levenhaupt* with all his troops, and treated the *Russians* as enemies every where. The Czar took it heinously ill, that (after the strongest assurances both by word and write to the contrary) he had forgot the many favours he had received from him; particularly, that of being advanced to the command of the *Lithuanian* army by his interest, besides several large sums of money he had been supplied with from time to time; and lastly, that for some time past he had not answered his letters, nor allowed his resident (whom he kept by him) to write. And for these reasons, with consent of many of the senators, he got *Oginsky Starosta* of *Samoitia* appointed and declared

BOOK Great-general of *Lithuania*. Prince *Wies-*
 VII. *nowitsky* being no more supplied with money
 ~~~~~ from the Czar, most part of the forces under  
 his command left him, and repaired to  
*Oginsky*, whom the Czar supplied, and who  
 continued firm to the last.

As does  
 the parti- King *Augustus's* party, also changed sides,  
 san *Smegilsky*. on some harsh language and disobligment he  
 met with from Prince *Menzekoff*; whereat  
 the Czar was so offended, that he took his  
 favourite heartily to task after his usual  
 manner. *Smegilsky* not only joined *Stani-*  
*slaus* himself, but set at liberty the Woywode  
 of *Kiow*, *Polotsky*, also Count *Tarlow*, be-  
 sides carrying some hundreds of *Russians*  
 prisoners to the *Swedes*.

The Czar during the winter took all the  
 necessary measures for recruiting, and sup-  
 porting his numerous army, in order to op-  
 pose the *Swedes*, whom he expected either  
 into *Lithuania* or *Livonia* at the opening of  
 the campaign; but they entered neither of  
 them, to the Czar's exceeding good luck,  
 and the King of *Sweden's* irrecoverable loss;  
 so that in the beginning of the year 1707,  
 the Czar had in *Poland* an army of forty  
 thousand foot and thirty thousand dragoons,  
 besides twenty regiments more he expected  
 from *Moscow* and elsewhere, without reck-  
 oning the troops he had in *Courland*,  
*Livonia*,

*Livonia*, &c. and having sure accounts that B o o k  
the King of *Sweden* was not to leave *Sa-* VII.  
*xony* soon, he sent his minister, Prince *Gre-*  
*gory Dolgoruky*, to *Limberg*, where the great  
council was to assemble in the beginning of  
the month of *February*. *Dolgoruky* found  
(as he expected) the whole senators in per-  
fect good understanding with his master the  
Czar. The Primate and most of the senators,  
as has been already said, were King *Augu-*  
*stus's* creatures, and were sure if *Stanislaus*  
prevailed, to lose their posts and prefer-  
ments; so that it appeared no difficult mat-  
ter to the Czar to bring them into his mea-  
sures: they all unanimously begged a-new,  
that his majesty would take the republic un-  
der his protection; which his minister Prince  
*Dolgoruky* assured them he would, and ne-  
ver in any event abandon them. Then as  
to the subsistence of the *Russian* army, the  
council agreed, that there should be allowed  
an hundred and forty thousand pound of  
bread a-day to seventy thousand men, with  
forage.

On the 11th, the council being full, the  
question was proposed whether they had a  
King or not? and after having considered  
King *Augustus's* conduct, his retreat, and  
treaty with the enemy, by which he re-  
nounced the crown, the throne was declar-  
ed

The great  
council of  
*Poland*  
declare  
the throne  
vacant.

BOOK ed vacant: then they appointed a dyet to  
 VII. be held at *Lublin* in the month of *May*.

~~~~~  
 A dyet appointed at *Lublin*. In the mean time, they caused assemble the provincial dyets, and also wrote to and exhorted those of the opposite party to repair to the said dyet, (promising them all safety) that they might confer together, and unanimously pursue the most effectual means for their common defence. The Primate also wrote letters to several foreign powers, desiring they would not acknowledge any for King of *Poland*, but the person who should be chosen by the free votes of all the orders of the republic: then the Great-general of the crown, *Fineasky*, presented a letter to the council, which he had that day received from the Czar, in these words:

The
 Czar's letter.

‘ Since the King of *Sweden* has carried his point so far as to take the crown from King *Augustus*, and by his sole authority, without a free election, has conferred it on another, it is not to be doubted, but that he will next use all the means he can think of, to create a misunderstanding betwixt the most serene republic and us. In order thereto, his ministers at foreign courts have spread a report, as if there was a treaty going to be entered into betwixt him and us. I do not deny, that whilst at *Stolitza*, I shewed before a foreign reign

' reign minister (as the duty of a Christian B O O K
 ' obliged me) some inclination towards VII.
 ' peace, but never a separate one, (such a ~~~~~
 ' thought never entered within my breast)
 ' but to treat publicly in concert with the
 ' republic, by ministers appointed by them
 ' and us; so that we hereby declare, that
 ' we shall never enter into any private or
 ' separate treaty, by no channel or mediati-
 ' on whatsoever, seeing the faith and repu-
 ' tation of a monarch consists in the religi-
 ' ous observance of treaties, which ought to
 ' be preferred to all private interests imagin-
 ' able. We also declare, that we will ad-
 ' here constantly to the treaties concluded
 ' betwixt the republic and us; which we
 ' shall always observe with the utmost ex-
 ' actness. This is what we thought fit to
 ' inform you of, recommending you be-
 ' sides, to the protection of the M O S T
 ' H I G H.'

This letter gave occasion to the council
 to depute some of their members to *Zol-
 kiow* (where the Czar had all this time con-
 tinued) to make his majesty their hearty
 acknowledgements for his favourable dispo-
 sitions towards the republic; as also to con-
 cert measures in the present situation of
 affairs.

Some days after, the Czar, the Czaro-
 wich, Prince *Menzekoff* and others arrived

The Czar
 arrives at
Limberg.

at

Book *Limberg*, where his majesty was received

VII. by the senators with all the ceremonies and marks of respect and confidence imaginable:

he assisted at their deliberations, and omitted nothing that could engage the senators to declare and confirm in this council, the Royal confederacy of *Sandomir*; and that all their resolutions should be considered as the effects and sequel of that confederacy: the resolution to declare the throne vacant, was confirmed: then, after the senators had held several conferences amongst themselves, as also with the Czar's ministers, they concluded in the following words:

The resolutions of the senators.

' We senators and confederate states of the republic and crown of *Poland*, and of the great dutchy of *Lithuania*, after having established amongst us the foundation of a strict alliance and sincere correspondence; as also, having unanimously resolved to maintain the general confederacy of *Sandomir*, have continued our deliberations in the manner following: We have given a public audience to his Czarish majesty's ministers, with whom we have had several conferences: after which, we resolved on our part to send deputies to his said majesty, to signify to him our most hearty acknowledgments and continuation of our friendship; as also, to declare our intention of putting in execution

‘ tion the articles of alliance concluded be- **Book**
 ‘ twixt us, and to represent to him our **VII.**
 ‘ grievances, in regard of his troops: and
 ‘ though these deputies have not delivered
 ‘ his resolutions to us on certain articles,
 ‘ such as we could have wished, they have
 ‘ nevertheless obtained from his imperial
 ‘ majesty an order to evacuate and deliver
 ‘ up to us all the towns in the *Polish Uk-*
 ‘ *raine*, occupied heretofore by Colonel
 ‘ *Pallie*; so that we have appointed com-
 ‘ missaries with troops, to receive and take
 ‘ possession of the said towns. We have
 ‘ also confirmed those who were appointed
 ‘ by the great council, to have inspection
 ‘ jointly with his Czarish majesty’s deputies,
 ‘ that no disorders be committed by his
 ‘ troops.’

By this conclusion, one would think there was a great harmony betwixt his Czarish majesty and the council of *Limberg*, supported by the two following declarations, one from the Czar, and the other from the confederates; but how sincere the generality of the *Poles* were, will very soon appear.

‘ *PETER* the first, by the Grace ^{The}
 ‘ of God, sovereign of all *Russia*, &c. ^{Czar’s de-}
 ‘ in consequence of our oath on the con- ^{claration.}
 ‘ clusion of a perpetual peace betwixt us
 ‘ and the republic of *Poland*, we oblige
 ‘ ourselves to observe sincerely, religiously

BOOK VII. and unalterably our alliance with the said republic; and that until the finishing of the war, or making peace with the enemy, wherein the republic is to be comprehended, we never will abandon the said republic in adversity nor prosperity: we never shall conclude a separate treaty, but on the contrary, will adhere to, protect and defend the republic in its rights, free election, and privileges, against our respective enemies, the King of *Sweden* and his adherents: we never will acknowledge any for King of *Poland*, but him who shall be set upon the throne by the unanimous election of the faithful confederates of the republic: we shall not in any ways meddle with the affairs of state, but shall leave the senators at full freedom in their approaching election. In fine, we shall make no demands on the republic, and shall execute faithfully all the articles of the treaty concluded betwixt us and them, on the word of a Prince, &c. At *Limberg*, the 30th of *March* 1707.

The declaration
of the
council.

The council on the other side declared themselves as follows: 'We senators assembled at the great council of *Limberg*, in consequence of the confederacy of *Sandomir*, by virtue of the promise the Czar has given us in writing, have in return given the following assurances to his majesty. In the first

' first place, that we shall never desist from pro- B o o k
 ' fessing the Roman catholic religion, nor VII.
 ' from supporting and maintaining our liber- ~
 ' ties, rights and privileges of a free election,
 ' nor from the treaty concluded betwixt the
 ' Czar and us, which we have confirmed;
 ' that we shall enter into no treaty with
 ' our adversaries without the Czar, but that
 ' we shall jointly defend and maintain our
 ' rights and privileges, and never shall hear-
 ' ken to any proposal, tho' ever so advan-
 ' tageous, nor acknowledge any for our
 ' King, but him who shall be raised to the
 ' throne by the faithful confederates of the
 ' republic, without ever having recourse to,
 ' or taking part with the *Swedes*; that we
 ' ever shall oppose the common enemy and
 ' his adherents, employing against them our
 ' troops, our lives and fortunes, jointly
 ' with his Czarish majesty's army; whom
 ' we shall never abandon, neither in adver-
 ' sity nor prosperity. We declare, that we
 ' will adhere to the present alliance inviol-
 ' ably during the course of the war, and
 ' until we shall obtain an advantageous
 ' peace: to all which, we oblige ourselves
 ' in consequence of the said confederacy,
 ' and of our oaths on the words of gentle-
 ' men. In testimony of which, we have
 ' subscribed these presents at *Limberg* the
 ' 30th of *March* 1707.'

BOOK VII. This act was signed by eighteen senators, the Primate *Szembick*, and the Great-general of the crown, *Sineafsky*, at their head. The Czar after having received these assurances, wherewith he was well pleased, returned to *Zolkiorw* with the Czarowich and *Menzekoff*; where, seeing his enemies had spread a report as if he designed to propose his son at the dyet of *Lublin* as candidate for the crown, conceiving how prejudicial such a report might be to their common interests, ordered his son for *Moscow*; and to convince the *Poles* how serious he was to put in execution the articles of this treaty, caused pay eight hundred thousand florins for the subsistence of the *Polish* and *Lithuanian* troops.

The Czar takes measures for protecting the dyet at *Lublin*.

After which, he ordered his armies to march different routs, as well to procure them easier subsistence, as to cover the approaching dyet from being insulted by the enemy. Marshal *Sheremetoff*, with thirty thousand men was ordered into the Woywodeship of *Cracow*; where to his no small surprize, he was joined by fifteen hundred *Russians*, who had been sent the year before into *Saxony*, auxillaries to King *Augustus*: and, as the King of *Sweden* played the master absolutely in *Saxony*, nothing could please him but to have these troops delivered up to him prisoners of war; which the
Saxon

Saxon commissaries in their treaty at *Altran-Book*
stadt had agreed to. But Colonel *Rentzel*, VII.
 who commanded the *Russians*, getting time-
 ly notice thereof, withdrew from *Saxony*,
 and marched into *Moravia* by the conni-
 vance and assistance of the Prince of *Ba-*
routh; then continued his route through
 the Emperor's country, under imperial co-
 lours, till he arrived in *Poland*, and joined
 the Marshal near to *Cracow*. The Czar
 was so well pleased with *Rentzel's* conduct,
 that he advanced him to the rank of a
 Major-general, and in a short time after to
 that of Lieutenant-general.

About the end of *March*, Colonel *Schults*, The adhe-
 with his own regiment, and about three rents of
 thousand *Cossacks* and *Calmucks* fell upon *Stanislaus*
 the famous partisan *Smegilsky* at *Lubrinska*; and the
 where, after a hot dispute which continued King of
 about two hours, he defeated him entirely, *Sweden*
 killed and took prisoners about two thou- destroyed,
 sand men, not losing on his side above
 three hundred.

After which, the said Colonel burnt and
 destroyed all the lands belonging to the
Stanislaites where-ever he passed, viz. the
 towns of *Ravitz*, *Cajanowa* and *Polish Lissa*;
 also in *Lithuania*, the *Russians* reduced *Bi-*
chow after a vigorous defence, and obliged
 the garrison to surrender at discretion. The
 Governor, (General *Stinsky*) with his bro-
 the-

BOOK ther and others, endeavoured to excuse
 VII. themselves, alledging they were obliged to
 ~~~~~ obey what orders they received from Prince  
*Wiesnowitsky*; which excuse the Czar had  
 no regard to, but sent them all to the number  
 of three thousand to *Moscow*, with an  
 hundred piece of cannon, ammunition, and  
 other warlike stores found in *Bichow*.

The *Russians*, tho' they had orders to  
 destroy only the lands belonging to those who  
 adhered to the King of *Sweden* and *Stanislaus*,  
 could not well distinguish which was  
 which; so that often the innocent suffered  
 with the guilty, which occasioned constant  
 complaints.

Lieutenant-general *Renn*, with a body of  
 ten thousand dragoons, marched towards  
*Dantzick*, which had by this time declared  
 for *Stanislaus*, sent to the magistrates these  
 following conditions; which if they did not  
 comply with, he would set all round the  
 town on fire.

1<sup>mo</sup>, That they should take down their  
 cannon from their walls. 2<sup>do</sup>, That they  
 should turn out of the town all who were  
 in *Stanislaus's* interest, and deliver up the  
*Swedish* commissary. 3<sup>tio</sup>, That they  
 should pay to the Czar the yearly revenue  
 the town was due to the King of *Poland*,  
 4<sup>to</sup>, A certain quantity of ammunition.  
 5<sup>to</sup>, That the *Russian* troops should be  
 quartered

quartered in the *Verder*. 6<sup>to</sup>, To furnish Book  
cloathing for fifteen hundred dragoons. VII.  
7<sup>mo</sup>, Tents for ten thousand men. 8<sup>vo</sup>,  
Bread for the army. 9<sup>no</sup>, To renounce  
for ever *Stanislaus*. 10<sup>mo</sup>, A gratuity for  
the General.

The *Dantzickers* would not go into these terms, but on the contrary prepared for their defence, and sent twelve hundred men under the command of a Colonel into the *Verder*; so that General *Renn* having no artillery, notwithstanding his high demands, thought fit to leave *Dantzick* for this time.

The King of *Sweden* all this while continued in *Saxony*, playing as much the sovereign in all that country as ever he had done in *Sweden*; so that none durst dispute his orders. The court of *France*, whose advantage it was, the longer he continued in *Germany*, flattered his ambition with the hopes of becoming mediator of the differences betwixt the courts of *France* and *Spain*, and the allies; whose interest it was, on the other hand, to use all possible means to induce the King of *Sweden* to quit *Germany*, the Emperor having gone into all his measures. The Duke of *Marlborough* arrived in *Saxony*, being sent by the Queen of *Great Britain* and the rest of the allies, to negotiate that affair; and having had a conference with Count *Piper*, the King of *Sweden's*

The King  
of *Sweden*  
master in  
*Saxony*.

The Duke  
of *Marl-*  
*borough*

BOOK *Sweden's* first minister, and then an audience

VII. of the King, (whm he found as intent as he could have wished to be revenged of the Czar) left *Saxony* after three days stay, without making any propofals to the King; who thought he had it in his power to oblige both parties; first, by attacking and reducing the Czar; then, after ending matters in *Russia*, to return in good time, and become mediator betwixt the allies and the two above-mentioned crowns.

has a conference with the King of *Sweden*.

The Czar sends an Ambassador to the Pope.

The Czar all this while intent on setting up a competitor to *Stanislaus*, who would have at least as good a right to the crown as he, sent Prince *Kurakin* Ambassador to the Pope, lest after King *Augustus* had renounced the crown in *Stanislaus's* favour, his Holiness might be persuaded to acknowledge him. Prince *Kurakin* in the first audience acquainted the Pope of his master the Czar's good inclination towards the holy see, that he had built a convent for the capuchins, and allowed the free exercise of the Roman catholic religion over his whole empire; which gave hopes of the long wished for re-union of the *Greek* and *Latin* churches: this able minister so satisfied his holiness, that he returned to his master with full and ample assurances, that the Pope never would acknowledge *Stanislaus* as King of *Poland*.

The



The Czar having carried this great point, his next design was to prolong as far as he could the King of *Sweden's* continuing in *Saxony*: his first thoughts were to attack him with an army far superior to his, and even march into *Saxony* in order thereto; but then apprehending that the dyet of *Lublin* would in his absence come to no conclusion, he fell upon a second expedient, which was the writing of letters to the Queen of *Great Britain*, and to the States-general, enumerating all the good offices he had done to King *Augustus*; first, that without his assistance, he never had been King of *Poland*; then the large sums of money and great armies he had from time to time during the war supplied him with, intreating, that they would not guarantie the late peace concluded betwixt him and the King of *Sweden*; also, that they would write to the said King, not to maltreat his Ambassador Mr. *Patcul*, whom King *Augustus* contrary to his parole had delivered up. But the Queen of *Great Britain* and the States-general being so intent with the other allies, to leave no further room for the King of *Sweden's* continuing in *Saxony*, (which took the place of all other considerations) went into the said guarantie, and never (so far as I could learn) did they make

Book  
VII.  
The Czar  
writes to  
Queen  
*Anne* and  
the States-  
general.

BOOK any step in favour of the poor unfortunate.

VI. *Patcul.*

~ The Czar finding himself disappointed in his expectations from Queen *Anne* and the States-general, notwithstanding the advantageous trade both these nations had of a long time carried on with *Russia*, (which he thought might incline them to grant him so small a favour) had recourse to another expedient, which was, to send an army of thirty thousand men of his best troops into *Swedish Pomerania*, judging thereby that the King of *Sweden* would rather march with his army in defence of his own country, than invade those of his neighbour's; by which the dyet of *Lublin* would have time to put their deliberations in execution. But this could not be done without having leave of the King of *Prussia* to march through a part of his country, which he would at this juncture by no means grant.

The Czar had all this time continued in his quarters at *Zolkiow*, urging the senators to assemble the dyet at *Lublin*; where in the interim, he published an universalia, inviting Prince *Wiesnowitsky* and others to repair to it, where they should be in all safety, to concur with him, and with the confederate senators, and agree upon the most effectual means for their common security

The Czar  
publishes  
an univer-  
salia.

curity and interest, which could not well BOOK  
 be done by any other means than by a VII.  
 hearty union amongst themselves. ~

*Wiesnowitsky* for himself and others, *Wiesno-*  
*witsky* pu-  
blishes a-  
nother,  
 caused publish a counter universalia, where-  
 in he declared, that he would not have de-  
 parted from the confederates, if he had not  
 seen the inevitable ruin of the republic so  
 long as they continued divided under the  
 management of two such powerful poten-  
 tates at variance, but of two evils the least  
 was to be chosen; therefore, he invited all  
 in general to adhere to King *Stanislaus*, un-  
 der the protection of the magnanimous King  
 of *Sweden*, who was a Prince of such un-  
 questionable honour and veracity, that the  
 republic had nothing to fear from him.  
 Whereas the Czar of *Russia*, as all his pre-  
 decessors ever since the rise of that mo-  
 narchy, had ever attempted the destruction  
 of *Poland*: for instance, the present havock  
 and oppression all ranks of people met with  
 from the irregular and cruel proceedings of  
 his troops, sparing neither friend nor foe.  
 Likeas, the massacre of the *Poles* at *Lu-*  
*brinska*, with the taking of *Bichow*, where  
 he not only sent all the *Polish* prisoners to  
*Moscow*, but also the whole artillery, am-  
 munition and warlike stores found in that  
 place, which are effects properly belonging  
 to the republic; so that (added he) I leave

BOOK it to every one to judge what can be expected but utter ruin and destruction by adhering to the Czar.

It is true, that when the reins are let loose to the soldiery in burning and destroying countries, it is not to be imagined but great disorders must be committed: but the Czar did all he could to prevent it, by sending repeated orders to the generals to take under their special protection all lands and estates belonging to the confederates of *Sandomir*: he also promised to the dyet which had met at *Lublin* the 22d of *May*, to restore to the republic the town of *Bichow*, and the whole artillery, &c. he had caused transport to *Moscow*, wherewith they were a little pacified.

After which, the Czar repaired in person to *Lublin* escorted by his guards, and accompanied by the ambassadors of *Denmark* and *Prussia*, together with Count *Beresini*, sent from Prince *Ragotzky* head of the malcontents in *Hungary*, demanding succours both of men and money, making offer at the same time of their crown to his son the Czarowich; which the Czar generously refused, declaring he would not interfere nor give occasion to his good ally the Emperor of *Germany*, to become his enemy.

The Czar  
refuses  
Prince Ra-  
gotzky's  
offer.

The Czar had not made any stay at *Lublin*, before he discovered the sentiments of most

most of the members; and, finding that BOOK they could not be depended upon, thought VII. fit to lay before them these three propositions.

*First*, That they should declare the throne His management at Lublin. vacant, and proceed to the election of a King.

*Secondly*, That they should frame a new form of oath, by which the senators should oblige themselves to adhere inviolably and faithfully to him.

*Thirdly*, That agreeable to their engagements, they should give surety for their firm adherence to their alliance.

To these propositions, the members of the dyet answered, they had not as yet sufficient assurance that King *Augustus* had altogether renounced the crown; that therefore they behoved to be allowed some time to send into *Saxony* to know the determined will of that Prince; that he had actually caused arrest *Fingsten* and *Imhoff* his two plenipotentiaries at *Altranstadt*, which gave ground to believe that he disapproved of the treaty they had made. The senators further proposed, that his Czarish majesty should find guaranties for his promises, in favours of him who should be elected, and of the republic.

The Czar made answer, that their pretended ignorance of King *Augustus's* not having

BOOK having altogether renounced the crown, was  
 VII. frivolous, the fact being universally known  
 so far, that the Queen of *Great Britain* and  
 the States-general had guarantied the said  
 treaty; that therefore, without prejudice to  
 their liberties, he would propose for candi-  
 dates to the crown, the Great-general *Si-*  
*neasky*, the Woywode of *Mazovia*, *Komun-*  
*tosky*, the Vice-chancellor *Szembeck*, and  
 the sword-bearer of the crown, Count *Dane-*  
*hoff*, all of them having done very important  
 service to the republic. The Czar added,  
 that any of the four they pleased to elect,  
 might be assured he would stand by him as  
 much as the King of *Sweden* did by *Stani-*  
*slaus*. This was doing these four gentle-  
 men no small honour, in giving them the  
 preference before all the princes, and other  
 grandees of *Poland*; especially from a Prince  
 who knew mankind so well as the Czar  
 did.

The Primate was amongst the first that  
 approved of the Czar's proposal, and told,  
 that there was a necessity of declaring the  
 throne vacant; and tho' he met with oppo-  
 sition from several of the senators, never-  
 theless, he knew so well how to manage them,  
 that at last it was resolved to declare the  
 throne vacant, and to publish an interreg-  
 num; after which, a dyet was to be held  
 at *Novogrodeck*, as much to reunite the two  
 nations,

nations, as to elect a King under the protection of the Czar. BOOK VII.

If all the members of the dyet of *Lublin* had acted with as much zeal as the Primate, they had come to a full conclusion in this assembly; but most part of the members were for prolonging the time by delays, which the Czar came very soon to understand; and that their only hopes were, that the King of *Sweden* would with his victorious army soon leave *Saxony*, and return into *Poland*, where he would dissipate all these imaginary schemes; most of the senators in that event being determined to acknowledge King *Stanislaus*, and hoping to gain his favour by their present delays.

The Czar in this situation, seeing plainly that he had nothing to depend on but his own force, chose rather to continue the war in *Poland* than carry it into his own country; and having his armies in most countries over all *Poland*, he sent orders to his generals to observe the King of *Sweden's* motions, to dispute all passes, and destroy all the bridges, particularly those of the *Vistula*, when they found themselves no more able to oppose him; then to burn and destroy all the countries through which he was to pass, that he might not subsist with his army: which orders were but too well put in execution by the *Russians*, *Cossacks* and *Poland ravaged.*

BOOK and *Calmucks*. All that was valuable they  
 VII. carried off, and the rest they burnt, which  
 ~~~~~ ruined both great and small, and occasioned  
 such a prodigious clamour, that Count
Danhoff came with complaints to his ma-
 jesty that his troops spared neither friend
 nor foe, but burnt and destroyed where-
 ever they marched, without distinction.
 The Czar told him, that by their delays
 they had forced him to pursue these mea-
 sures, which he thought most conducive for
 keeping off and annoying his enemies, being
 persuaded that he had nothing to depend
 upon but his own power; that he would
 nevertheless continue to protect the faithful
 senators, who had entered into an alliance
 with him, provided they continued firm,
 and never in any event acknowledge *Stani-
 slaus* for King.

The King of Sweden having at last, on
 of Swe- the 1st of *September* broke up from *Altran-*
 den's ex- *stadt*, directed his march for *Poland*, and as
 traordina- he passed near to *Dresden*, the capital of *Sa-*
 ry visit to he passed near to *Dresden*, the capital of *Sa-*
 King Au- xony, accompanied by an *English* peer (the
 gustus. Earl of *Peterborough*) and an Adjutant on-
 ly, took it in his head to pay a visit, and bid
 adieu to King *Augustus*: the peer, though
 he was a person of as much resolution as
 himself, endeavoured to dissuade him from
 that design. But as this Prince was always
 unadvisable, he would needs go; where,
 and

after having visited the Queen of Poland BOOK VII.
and the Electress dowager, he went and
breakfasted with the King: after breakfast
he viewed the fortifications, then embraced
and took leave of King *Augustus*, who did
not offer him the least injury.

The Czar at this time was at *Grodno*,
where being informed that the King of *Sweden*
had already entered *Poland*, he went to
Warsaw and called a council of war, where
he gave the necessary orders, leaving the
command of his army to Marshal *Sheremetoff*,
then went himself to *St. Petersburg*, in
order to bring together most of the forces
and best troops of the empire, to swallow
up the King of *Sweden* at once.

The Czar
goes to
Peters-
burgh.

Colonel *Alexander Gordon* was about this
time released from his long *Swedish* confine-
ment, in exchange for Colonel *Einshied*,
who had been taken prisoner by Marshal
Sheremetoff in *Livonia*: he met for the first
time with the Czar at *Pleskow*, on his way
to *St. Petersburg*, where he was received
very graciously, and ordered to return with
him to the said place. Being daily in com-
pany with his majesty, amongst other dis-
course, he was pleased to ask him, what the
general opinion of the *Swedes* was, of
the present situation of affairs? The Colo-
nel, who very well knew the Czar's tem-
per, that he wanted to be spoke to freely,

BOOK and without reserve, told him that the
 VII. *Swedes* were generally of opinion, that, considering the great success their King had had already, nothing was impossible or too difficult for him, and that one decisive battle would put an end to the whole. Very well said the Czar, we shall take the best care of that we can: we shall fight with him as long as he has a mind, and perhaps not come to a decisive stroke till it shall be judged convenient. The Colonel was a few days after advanced to the rank of a Brigadier.

The King
 of Swe-
 den's diffi-
 cult
 march.

The *Russian* generals behaved with abundance of conduct and seemed to be no more afraid of the *Swedes*; (so far matters were changed) they disputed all passes with the King of *Sweden*, particularly on the *Vistula*; which, finding impracticable to pass, the bridges being all destroyed, he quartered his army all along, from *Warsaw* and *Thorn*, in the *Royal-Prussia* near to *Dantzick*.

The *Russian* infantry were quartered betwixt *Kaven* and *Ursa*; the dragoons from *Tycozin* to *Grodno* and *Novogrodeck*, much upon their guard: the crown-army, commanded by their Great-general *Sineafsky* at *Ulodowa*, in *Black-Russia*, no ways capable to give any assistance to the *Russians*.

In

In the interim, an Ambassador from the *Ottoman Porte* came to congratulate the King of *Sweden* on his good success; as also, King *Stanislaus* on his accession to the throne, which alarmed the Czar not a little, but without reason, for the King of *Sweden* was so much convinced of his own importance, that he neither accepted nor refused an alliance with the *Turks*, but dismissed the Ambassador with a compliment.

The King of *Sweden* congratulated by the *Porte*,

However, the Czar fearing the worst, ordered some troops into the *Ukraine*, that he might not be surprized by the *Turks*: then from *St. Petersburg* he went to *Moscow*, where his presence was necessary, both for causing repair the losses the fire had occasioned in that city, (by reducing of some thousands of houses to ashes) and for punishing in an exemplary manner the ring-leaders of a rebellion, formerly mentioned, in *Astracan*, who had committed horrid cruelties, cutting the throats of all the foreigners, men, women and children. This rebellion was thought to have been fomented by some *Strelitzes*, who had been banished to that country: it was at last quelled by General *Peter Appraxin*, the Admiral's brother, who cut to pieces most of the rebels, and saved only the chief persons, whom he sent to *Moscow*, to the number of an hundred and above; where some were broke upon

The Czar sends his troops into the *Ukraine*.

The rebels at *Astracan* punished,

BOOK the wheel, some beheaded, and the rest
 VII. hanged. The Czar had the satisfaction after having put an end to his weightier affairs, to see the great royal dispensary finished; which is one of the greatest ornaments of the city: there are for ordinary eight apothecaries, as many apprentices, and upwards of forty journeymen, not only to furnish drugs for the use of the armies and fleets, but also to serve the whole empire, which makes a great addition to the Czar's revenues, none other being tolerated within his majesty's dominions.

There is also another branch of the Czar's revenues, which may be here mentioned, *viz.* the breweries; his majesty having over all the towns and villages in this extensive empire, breweries called *Cabacks*, where malt-spirits, beer and mead are always sold for the profit of the Prince, none being allowed to brew any of these liquors for sale, the alehouses and taverns being obliged to get themselves supplied from the *Cabacks*.

1708.

The King
 of Sweden
 passes the
Vistula.

In the beginning of the year 1708, the Czar having passed the holydays at St. *Petersburgh*, received expresses from Marshal *Sheremetoff* and Prince *Menzekoff*, that the King of *Sweden*, taking the opportunity of the ice, had passed the *Vistula*, and was in full march towards *Lithuania*. The *Russians* who were quartered (as is already said),

saïd), observing the motions of the enemy, Book
 set at the same time all the country on VII.
 fire before them; so that nothing was to be
 seen but smoke and flames. The Czar,
 whose design was always to keep the ene-
 my at as great a distance from his own
 country as possible, repaired with all dili-
 gence to *Grodno*, where he was resolved to
 defend the passage of the *Niemen*, and
 having ordered his generals by no means to
 engage the enemy, but with a visible advan-
 tage, he caused fortify the bridge at *Grodno*,
 and entrusted the command of that post to
 Brigadier *Mansfield*, with a body of about
 two thousand men.

The King of *Sweden* still advanced, not-
 withstanding the difficulties he met with,
 and came, accompanied only with six hun-
 dred of his troops, and attacked the *Russians*
 with such fury, who were posted at the
 said bridge, that on the first onset, he beat
 them, and forced them to retreat under the
 walls of *Grodno*. The Czar, who was in
 the town, finding that the bridge was for-
 ced; and being informed, that the whole
Swedish army were ready by break of day
 to invest the place, retired in the night with
 his favourite, Prince *Menzekoff*, towards *Wil-*
na; but, having account that the King of
Sweden had only six hundred of his troops,
 wherewith he had forced the bridge, and
 taken

Forces the
 pass at
Grodno.

The Czar
 retires.

BOOK taken possession of the town of *Grodno*, he ordered a body of three thousand men to re-take the place, and make the King prisoner; but all the inhabitants having taken arms in defence of the *Swedes*, the *Russians* were obliged to abandon that enterprize.

The Czar was so ill pleased with Brigadier *Mahsfeld's* conduct in allowing himself to be beat from the bridge by so few, having under his command near four to one of the enemy, that he caused put him in arrest with design to have him judged by a council of war; but he fearing the worst, found means to break his arrest and went over to the enemy, where he gave the best information he could of the condition and designs of the *Russians*. The Czar in the mean time sent orders to Prince *Repnia* and General *Bower*, who were quartered towards *Wolinia*, in the most southern parts of *Lithuania*, to march towards *Minsky* and *Potosky*, in order to join him, if found necessary: he likewise ordered the troops which were in *Courland* and *Livonia* to advance towards *Poloczka* on the same design; and finding, that the King of *Sweden* was designed to pursue him close, and (as he had given out) to carry the war into the heart of *Russia*, or oblige the Czar to come to a decisive Battle, (by either of which the King thought surely to gain his point) he was as prudent

prudent as the other was forward, and took all possible measures to prevent both; and finding his designs had succeeded so well hitherto, the *Swedish* army being already diminished both in their men and horses, for want of better provisions and forage, in so violent a season, he went on in the same manner, continuing to burn and destroy all the countries through which the enemy designed to march; and at the same time, sent repeated orders to his generals, to shun all occasions of coming to an action with the *Swedes*, unless the advantage was so visible that they could not fail of success.

Book VII.

Shuns coming to a battle.

The Czar after having left *Wilna* marched and quartered his troops betwixt *Mohilon* and *Orsa*, near to the *Boristhenes*; whence, he had a sure retreat to *Meizislaw*, and from that to *Smolensko*, the *Cossacks* and *Colmucks* leaving nothing behind them but ruins and destruction; so that the King of *Sweden* was obliged to disperse his troops into quarters, where they continued until the month of *May*, not being able to march for want of forage and all other necessaries of life.

The King of Sweden disperses his troops into quarters.

Nevertheless there happened an action betwixt *Minsky*, and *Borissaw*: a body of the *Swedish* cavalry and dragoons, attacked a part of the *Russian* army commanded by Marshal *Sheremetoff*, who notwithstanding continued

BOOK continued his march, keeping a strong guard
 VII. in his rear, so that the enemy could make
 ~~~~~ nothing of it.

Lieutenant-general *Bower*, after having destroyed most places in *Swedish Livonia*; particularly the town of *Derpt*, the fortifications whereof were blown up and demolished, got orders from the Czar to march with the troops under his command through the frontiers of *Courland* and *Lithuania* to join the great army at *Smolensko*, or where they might happen to be. Brigadier *Gordon*, with three regiments of infantry and one of dragoons, became very uneasy to Prince *Wiesnowitsky*, whose quarters he often beat up, forcing him to retire from place to place, cutting down his troops, particularly at *Hori* and *Gorky*; whereupon he was advanced to the charge of Major-general.

*Wiesnowitsky* in-  
 commod-  
 ed.

*Sineasky* Great-general of the crown, was all this while in *Black-Russia*, giving no assistance to the Czar but thundering out universalia's against *Stanislaus* and his adherents, declaring them to be traitors to their country, exacting contributions (as the *Russians* had done) both from friend and foe. The truth is, he could not do much, the troops under his command consisting mostly of horse, and being ill payed and worse cloathed. The recruiting the *Russian* dragoons  
 and



and *Swedish* cavalry had left few good horses BOOK  
 in the country: the *Cossacks* and *Calmucks* VII.  
 had also carried off great numbers of them. ~

The Czar after having crossed the *Boristhenes* with a part of his army, where he was joined by twenty thousand recruits, marched to *Poloczka*; from thence he designed to take a trip to *St. Petersburg*, to see what condition his fleet was in. This Prince, after so great fatigue, fell ill of a dysentery The Czar falls ill. as he was upon the point of taking journey; upon which, he repaired to *Smolensko*, leaving the command of his army to Marshal *Sheremetoff* and the rest of the generals, after giving them what directions and cautions he thought necessary.

The *Russian* fleet were not yet in condition to deal with admiral *Wachtmuffer*, who lay at *Revel* with a fleet, consisting of thirty six men of war: notwithstanding which, Captain *Zenavin* made a descent into *Finland*, and attacked a small place called *Borgo*, which he took, pillaged and burnt, then retired, carrying off most of the young people for slaves. After this he attacked *Bjornco*, and other small islands, treating them in the same The Russians get advantages at sea. manner. About the same time, Vice-admiral, Count *Bois*, with his gallies, took several vessels and barks, loaded with provisions for *Stockholm*, which he carried to *St. Petersburg*. All these advantages by sea (little as they

BOOK they were) gave the Czar no small pleasure;  
 VII. and I dare say, contributed more to his  
 recovery than his physicians.

No sooner was he recovered than he was obliged to take journey for his capital, in order to appease a sedition of the *Doncoffacks* occasioned by one Colonel *Bolawin*, induced thereto (as was generally believed) by *Mazepa*, *Hettman* of the *Ukraine Coffacks*, that he might thereby oblige the Czar to divide his army. It had effect so far, that the Czar ordered *Dolgoruky*, with a body of twelve thousand foot and dragoons, to prevent the consequences of this rebellion: but these *Coffacks* knowing nothing of their Colonel's design, when they understood that it was a rebellion against the Czar, would have taken *Bolowin*, and sent him prisoner to *Moscow*.

*Bolawin's* had he not prevented them, by taking a pistol and shooting himself dead; after which, *sedition* they carried his body to *Asoph* to the Governor Mr. *Apraxin*, who caused cut off his head and sent it to *Moscow*: upon which *and death.* Prince *Dolgoruky* was recalled, and ordered to join the army with his troops.

The King of *Sweden* having intelligence that the *Hettman*, *Mazepa*, had marched with an army of thirty thousand *Coffacks*, to join a body of twelve thousand *Russians*, commanded by General *Goltz*, who stood entrenched at *Borisow*, observing the

the motions of the enemy, marched with a Book  
 design to attack them. The *Hettman*, who VII.  
 had been sometime ago in good understand-  
 ing with his *Swedish* majesty, made no great  
 haste to forward his march; so that General *Goltz* as the enemy advanced, broke up,  
 and retreated towards *Mohilow*; where he  
 was joined by a body of four thousand dra-  
 goons, commanded by Major-general *Stough*,  
 together with some *Cossacks* and *Calmucks*,  
 who were continually employed in consum-  
 ing and burning the provisions before the e-  
 nemy. The King of *Sweden* nevertheless,  
 quickened his march with design to overthrow  
 this body, but in vain, they still retreating  
 before him and destroying the bridges, and  
 every thing else to retard his march: but at  
 length, *Goltz* having joined Prince *Répnin*  
 and *Renn*, being now about twenty thou-  
 sand foot and dragoons, Marshal *Shereme-*  
*toff* joining them also with five thousand dra-  
 goons more, a council of war was held:  
 in which it was resolved no more to be on  
 the retreat, but to wait the enemy at a place  
 called *Holowfin*; where they were strongly  
 entrenched.

The King of *Sweden* still advancing, and  
 perceiving that the *Russians* were joined to-  
 gether in so great a body, and resolved to stand  
 his attack, marched against them with the  
 greatest part of his cavalry, and all the infan-

**BOOK** try he could bring up. On the 16th of *July* he attacked the lines, where, after a strong resistance, and upwards of two hours dispute, the *Russians* were forced to retire, leaving six pieces of cannon: the *Swedes* lost most men; above half of the Kings *Draughts* were killed, together with their commander Major-general *Wrangel*, and upwards of fifty officers more; amongst whom was a Colonel and one of the King's General-adjutants, with near to three thousand soldiers killed and wounded. On the *Russian* part was killed, Major-general *Wonsfwen*, and about twenty-six officers more, with two thousand soldiers. The King of *Sweden* did not pursue the victory, which had cost him so dear; the *Russians* before the engagement had taken care to send away all their provisions and baggage.

The battle  
of Ho-  
lowfin.

After this affair the King of *Sweden* began to think, that he would find greater difficulty in arriving at the capital of *Russia*, than he had imagined, seeing plainly that the *Russians* were much improved in the art of war; which was owing in a great measure to his despising them too much, in neglecting such favourable opportunities, which now too late he began to be sensible of.

But even yet, this hot and unadviseable young Prince had a notable game to play, if he had followed right measures. Why  
march

march to *Moscow* by the *Ukraine* which was **BOOK**  
 rather the way to *Constantinople*? Was it **VII.**  
 the encouragement he met with from the *Hettman*, *Mazepa*, who promised to join  
 him with an army of thirty thousand *Cossacks* and furnish him with provisions, &c?  
 A weak expedient! Had the king of *Sweden*  
 attacked the *Russian* Empire from his own  
 frontiers, by marching against *Pleskow*, in New er-  
 conjunction with General *Levenhaupt*, ta- rors in the  
 ken that town, which could not have held out King of  
 long, and there erected a magazine; by Sweden's  
 this means, he could have marched into conduct,  
*Russia* at the head of betwixt sixty and se-  
 venty thousand *Swedes* and been provided  
 with recruits &c. (if they had been want-  
 ed) from *Sweden*. If he had directed his  
 march thus, the Czar with all his prudence  
 and force must have succumbed: the King  
 of *Sweden* could have forced him into any  
 conditions he had a mind to; but pursuing  
 his march through deserts and uninhabited  
 countries, allowing his army to be cut off  
 in divisions and parties, he at last found him-  
 self reduced to that extremity of hunger,  
 cold, and want of every thing, that he was  
 neither well able to fight nor fly.

The Czar joined his army two days after  
 the affair of *Holowfin*, and was exceeding  
 well pleased when the Marshal gave him the  
 accounts thereof; saying, he was always  
 willing

BOOK willing on such terms to engage the enemy.

VII. The King of Sweden continued some time about *Mohilow*, as much to refresh his troops after so long and fatiguing a march, as to wait the arrival of the rest of his army; and beginning already to be pinched for want of provisions, he sent orders to General Count *Levenhaupt*, who was then in *Courland*, to march with all expedition to join him with what troops, ammunition, and provisions he was able to bring along.

His orders  
to General  
*Leven-  
haupt*.

General *Levenhaupt*, having received his master's orders, with great diligence marched with all the troops he could raise, consisting of full sixteen thousand horse, foot and dragoons, all natural *Swedes*, with three months provisions for the whole *Swedish* army. If the King had waited until he had been joined by this body with so great a quantity of provisions, the Czar had been diffculted: but this unhappy Prince had no patience, but must needs pass the *Boristhenes*; wherewith the Czar was so well pleased, that he never thought of disputing it with him. I know not what opinion the *Swedish* generals had of their King's proceedings, but of this I am sure, that all the *Russian* generals were fully persuaded the King with his whole army must inevitably perish, considering the prudent measures

measures the Czar had already taken, and **BOOK**  
was resolved to pursue to the end. **VII.**

The King of *Sweden* crossed the *Boristhenes* on the 15th of *August*, with his whole army, and continued his march towards the *Soffa*, which he likewise crossed without opposition: but at a third small river called *Czarnapatta*, there happened a sharp encounter betwixt a body of the *Russians*, commanded by Prince *Galitzin*, and six of the *Swedish* best regiments, commanded by Major-general *Rose*. He crosses the *Boristhenes*.

The King of *Sweden* having ordered that General to march with the said regiments, and post himself to the best advantage on the banks of *Czarnapatta*, the Czar had no sooner accounts of it, than he ordered Lieutenant-general, Prince *Galitzin*, with eight regiments of infantry and two of dragoons, to fall upon this body: he came up with them on the 9th of *September* early, after a most tedious march; and being favoured with an exceeding thick fog, he was not discovered by the enemy till he was close upon them. The *Swedes* fought with their ordinary bravery, the *Russians* (being near two to one) attacked them with no less vigour: the battle continued until the fog cleared up, when the *Swedes* seeing themselves like to be attacked on all quarters, made their retreat after the best manner they

BOOK they could, still making a front towards the

VII. *Russians*, who pursued them for a mile, but no further, lest the King of *Sweden*, who lay with his army only a few leagues distant, should have sent a reinforcement.

The  
*Swedes*  
worsted in  
the first  
engage-  
ment.

In this action the *Swedes* lost six colours and two standards, with about a thousand men killed and wounded. The loss of the *Russians* did not amount to above seven hundred. The Czar was so well pleased with this victory, that he invited the generals to sup with him; where he was exceeding facetious and merry, and seemed to be no more in pain about his enemies.

When the *Swedes* returned to their camp in such disorder and so much diminished, they saw plainly, that they had taught the *Russians* the art of war; and, that they were no more invincible themselves.

Some days after, as the King continued his march, he was attacked on his left by the *Cossacks* and *Calmucks*, supported by six regiments of dragoons, commanded by Lieutenant-general *Renn*. About a hundred of the *Swedes* were killed; amongst whom, were two colonels, *Tanquard* and *Rosenstiern*: the King had on this occasion a horse shot under him, being always amongst the first to attack the enemy.

One would think, after all these disadvantages and losses, that the King of *Sweden*



den would have altered his measures, or at least waited until General *Levenhaupt* had come up; who had made such an expeditious march, that on the 24th of *August*, he had already got the length of *Poloczko*: but this head-strong Prince, after having resolved to attack *Smolensko*, (which, was the wisest course he could have taken in his then situation, being already within a day's march of that place) of a sudden altered his course, and took to the right-hand, towards the *Ukraine*, depending no doubt on the great promises *Mazepa* had made him; who had sent his favourite *Bestinsky* to him before he had crossed the *Boristhenes*, assuring his majesty, that the *Cossacks* looked upon him as their deliverer, and were ready to receive him with open arms; which was enough to determine him to direct his march to that country, without considering that it put him still at a greater distance from General *Levenhaupt*, who at last arrived on the 27th of *September* at *Slow*; and, after having laid bridges over the *Boristhenes*, passed it the 3d of *October*. The Czar being duly informed thereof, took all imaginable care to prevent his joining his master the King of *Sweden*, and marched with ten regiments of dragoons and six of infantry, besides *Cossacks*, towards *Gorky*; and at the same time, ordered Lieutenant-

BOOK general *Bower*, with six regiments of dragoons more, to march in his rear at a little distance, to be in readiness to join him if necessary. The Czar still continuing his march, came in sight of the enemy on the 8th of *October*, who were encamped on the banks of the small river *Pronia*: *Levenhaupt* perceiving that the *Russians* were in his neighbourhood, but ignorant of their numbers, did not think it his business to go and attack them, but rather to continue his march towards *Lefno*, and further on, till he should join his master, according to orders.

Next day the Czar at the head of this army, consisting of about twenty thousand men, came up with the enemy before nine o'clock in the morning. So soon as the the *Swedish* General was sensible that the *Russians* were preparing to attack him, he drew up his army in order of battle to receive them, and at the same time posted two battallions of infantry on the side of a morass, through which the enemy must of necessity pass, before they could come to attack him: whereupon the Czar ordered Colonel *Campbel* with his regiment of dragoons on foot, (sustained by two battallions of the guards) to march and drive the enemy off from the morass, where after a sharp dispute (the *Russians* attacking vigorously)

ously) the *Swedes* were beat from it; after which both armies were disposed in battle array, the Czar having extended his line beyond that of the enemy, with design to attack them in flank at the same time: the action as usual, began with the artillery on both sides, the *Russian* troops having orders not to fire till they were within ten or twelve yards of the enemy, who at the same time kept up their fire: at last the battle went vigorously on, and continued so for near the space of an hour, till at length the *Swedes* making a forward push, the *Russians* were forced to retire, but in good order. *Levenhaupt* imagining they had got enough of it, did not pursue the advantage, but rather designed to continue his march. Lieutenant-general *Bower* having by this time joined the army with six regiments of fresh dragoons, with these the Czar strengthened his whole line; so that against four o'clock in the afternoon, the battle was renewed and fought with great vigour and resolution (neither side yielding) till late in the night, that the *Swedes* were pushed and forced to retire behind their waggons. The Czar on account of the darkness of the night, could not pursue the victory, but withdrew a little back with his army, continuing all the night under arms, in order to fall upon the enemy by break

BOOK VII.  
The Czar attacks *Levenhaupt*.


The *Swedes* worsted & gain.

BOOK of day and put an end to the affair; for  
 VII. which he made the necessary dispositions,  
 causing at the same time care to be taken  
 of the wounded; and forbidding on pain of  
 death his troops to stir for pillage; having  
 determined from the beginning to perish  
 with his whole army, rather than allow this  
 reinforcement with so great a quantity of  
 provisions, &c. to join the King of Swe-  
 den.

General  
*Leven-*  
*haupt*  
 marches  
 off in the  
 night.

As day-light appeared, the Czar being  
 ready to attack the enemy, was surprized to  
 find that General *Levenhaupt* had marched  
 off in the night, not being able to make  
 any further resistance, leaving his artillery,  
 ammunition and provisions, together with  
 the wounded, to the mercy of the enemy.  
 The Czar ordered Lieutenant-general *Flough*  
 in pursuit of him, with a thousand grena-  
 diers on horseback, and four regiments of  
 dragoons, who came up with the *Swedes*  
 about a league distant from the field of  
 battle, and pursued them so close that they  
 were forced to retire into a church-yard, at  
 a village called *Propoisse*, to the number of  
 four thousand, and on *Flough's* approach  
 made a sign to capitulate: whereupon he sent  
 a Lieutenant with six grenadiers to offer  
 them quarters, but they, most of them being  
 drunk with brandy, had no regard to the  
 command of their officers, but fired on the  
 Lieutenant

General  
*Flough* de-  
 feats a bo-  
 dy of the  
*Swedes*  
 next day.

Lieutenant and killed two of the grenadiers, so that with much ado he escaped himself: whereupon General *Flough* attacked them on all quarters, and put to the sword all that did not throw down their arms and ask mercy. General *Levenhaupt* had some hours before crossed the river *Lolock* with betwixt four and five thousand horse and dragoons, wherewith he joined his master the King of *Sweden*. Book VII. 

This battle was obstinately fought on both sides, the *Swedish* army consisting of sixteen thousand men; the Czar's about twenty-eight thousand, besides his own presence, which was worth several thousands more. On the *Swedish* side about an hundred officers were killed, (amongst whom was Major-general *Stackelberg*), and three thousand eight hundred private men; two thousand nine hundred were wounded during the action; and this, besides those who were killed and taken in the pursuit; who amounted to about five thousand more; they lost thirty-seven colours and standards, sixteen pieces of cannon, seven thousand three hundred waggons, with money, provisions and ammunition, besides what they had set fire to before their retreat.

Of the *Russians* were killed upwards of three thousand (amongst whom was one Colonel, with eighty officers of different ranks) there

BOOK there were wounded about four thousand, amongst whom was a Lieutenant-general, the Prince of *Darmstadt* (who died some time after) also two *Russian* colonels; Lieutenant-general *Bower*, was slightly wounded.

The King of *Sweden* finding himself disappointed of this reinforcement, and the provisions, &c. he so much depended upon, directed his march from *Nisna* to *Orlacow* on the river *Disna*, which he designed to cross, in order to join *Mazepa*; which was now all he had to depend on. This he endeavoured on the 21st of *October*, to oppose whose passage Major-general *Gordon* was ordered, with a battalion of grenadiers, three regiments of foot, with four regiments of dragoons, with eight field-pieces; with this speciality, not to allow the enemy to cross that river cost what it would: the *Swedes* having prepared in order thereto, betwixt thirty and forty large floats of thick trees, strongly joined together (each float containing about an hundred men, as close as they could stand), moved forward about six o'clock at night, and were so warmly received by the fire of the *Russians*, both from their artillery and small arms, that they were often beat back with incredible loss: the fire continued from six to eleven at night without intermission, until the *Russians* (their ammunition being quite exhausted) were

General  
*Gordon*  
ordered to  
oppose the  
King of  
*Sweden's*  
crossing  
the *Disna*.

were forced to retire a little way back, the **BOOK** enemy keeping a continued fire upon them. VII.

The Major-general sent several adjutants to the army, which lay about seven leagues distant, at a small place called *Verowich*, demanding ammunition, and did not march off till he received Marshal *Sheremetoff's* orders; then carried off his artillery, with all the wounded men, who were not a few. Of the *Russians* were killed about eight hundred; wounded near to nine hundred; amongst others, the Lieutenant-colonel of the grenadiers, with thirteen officers more; killed, a Colonel, with sixteen other officers of different ranks. The *Swedes* were computed to have lost about two thousand, besides wounded.

The enemy were three days in crossing the river with their artillery, ammunition and baggage; and, if his Czarish majesty could have been prevailed upon to march with the whole army and attack the enemy before they had transported the half of their troops, which was the opinion of the generals, in all human probability, there had been an end of the King of *Sweden* at this time: but he judging that the enemy was not as yet sufficiently weakned, would delay giving a decisive battle until a more proper occasion.

Gordon ill supported, makes a good retreat.

The Czar loses an opportunity.

The

BOOK VII. The King of *Sweden* having with such difficulty crossed the *Disna*, directed his march towards the dutchy of *Zernicow*, where the Czar had taken care to destroy all the provisions and forage, before he could get that length. In that country, he was joined by the *Hettman Mazepa*, but not as he had undertaken; for of thirty thousand *Cossacks* he had promised to his *Swedish* majesty, scarce four, or at most five thousand marched with him; and even these, the third day after, mostly returned to the Czar, declaring, that they knew not where the *Hettman* was leading them, nor any thing of his treachery. The Czar received them all very well, praising and commending their fidelity, and appointed with the approbation of their colonels, Mr. *Scuropatsky*, *Hettman*, in place of *Mazepa*, who was declared traitor and burnt in effigy.

But before we proceed farther, it may not be improper to give a short account of this man's life and character:

The story of Mazepa. *John Mazepa* was a *Polish* gentleman of *Volinia*, born near *Bulozerkiow*, where his estate, called *Mazepa* lay, under which designation he went: his mother's name was *Magdalena Mokiowska*: in his youth he was page to *Casimir* King of *Poland*, where he got some tincture of letters; and, having lived sometime about that King's

court



court untill the *Cossacks* rebelled against the crown of *Poland*, he accompanied the crown General, to whom he was of use during the rebellion, and who, finding him a man of parts, procured his being sent envoy to the Cham of *Tartary*: on his return, being taken prisoner by the *Zaparoge Cossacks*, they sent him to their then *Hettman*, *John Samuelowich*, into whose favour he so well insinuated himself, that from time to time he advanced him, till at length he became his prime counsellor and secretary, being employed in all his affairs of moment, and in gathering up his revenues; so that he became exceeding rich, and was much esteemed by the *Cossacks*: and as Prince *Basil Gallitzin*, in Czar *Peter's* minority (as is already said), designed the destruction of the two Czars, then to step into the throne himself by marrying the Princess *Sophia*, knowing that the *Hettman*, *John Samuelowich* was a faithful vassal of the Czar's and would be a great stop to his designs, being a man of great power, as he lay encamped near *Belgorod* on the frontiers of the *Ukraine*, with an army of *Cossacks*; and Prince *Basil* about two leagues distant with the *Russians*; the Prince sent to invite the old *Hettman*, with his son, to come and dine with him, and concert measures for the ensuing campaign; where being

BOOK come, Prince *Basil* made them both prisoners. VII. The *Hettman* was sent into banishment, then he caused strike of the son's head, without other form or process than giving out that they were traitors to the Czar, and kept a correspondence with the *Turks* and *Tartars*; which had rendered the campaign so unsuccessful: then, he established his Minion *John Mazepa*, *Hettman*, as the person most capable and beloved by the *Cossacks*.

*John Mazepa* was established *Hettman*, Anno 1687, and marched the following year, together with his patron, Prince *Basil*, towards *Perecop*: they were as unsuccessful as they had been the year before, but Prince *Basil* falling into disgrace, and being sent by the Czar into banishment, *Mazepa* had the cunning by force of presents among the courtiers, and other arts, to ingratiate himself with the young Czar *Peter*; so that he was continued *Hettman*: and in 1695, he assisted the *Russians* in taking *Taven*, *Singerie* and *Aflangorod* on the *Borisbenes*: in 1697 he fortified *Taven* to that degree, that the *Turks* having besieged it with a considerable army, on the approach of the *Russians* to relieve it, they not being able to take it, abandoned the siege.

He married a rich widow in the *Ukraine*, by whom he had only one daughter, who dying

ing young, there remained of all his kindred B o o k  
 only a sister's son, whose name was *Obedi-* VII,  
*owsky*: this nephew he designed for his suc-  
 cessor, brought him up in the army, and  
 made him Governor of *Nygin*, and thereaf-  
 ter sent him (*Anno 1707*) into *Livonia* at  
 the head of the *Cossacks* under Marshal *She-*  
*remetoff*, where he behaved well enough.

*Mazepa* having laid down the plan of his  
 revolt with the King of *Sweden* some time  
 ago, and carried on their correspondence by  
 means of his favourite *Biestensky*, who had  
 been long in his service, and to whose fide-  
 lity he trusted: the King undertook to  
 to make him sovereign of the whole *Uk-*  
*raine*, and adjacent countries; or (as others  
 say) his design was to restore *Ukraine* to *Po-*  
*land*, together with *Kiow* and *Smolensko*; and  
 he was to have for himself and his heirs  
 whatsoever, the dutchies of *Courland*, *Seme-*  
*gal* and *Samoitia* in sovereignty, under the  
 protection of *Poland*. Be this as it will, he  
 was near eighty years old when this ambitious  
 project possessed his breast; and after the  
 King of *Sweden* had crossed the *Disna*, he  
 called all the colonels together, and a bo-  
 dy of *Cossacks*, which he thought he could  
 depend upon, made a speech to the colonels,  
 wherein he set forth the tyranny and bar-  
 barity of the *Russians*; how often they had  
 encroached upon the liberties and privileges

BOOK of the *Cossacks*; that now they had it in their  
VII. power to shake off that yoke, and make  
~ Ukraine hence forward a sovereign, independent, and consequently a flourishing nation; which to effectuate, he invited them all to march with him and join the King of *Sweden* with all their force, and fight with him against the perfidious *Russians*, affirming that with their joint force, they would oblige the Czar to grant them the conditions the King of *Sweden* had undertaken.

The colonels seemed all of them much surprized at this speech, and told the *Hettman*, that it was what they had not as yet considered, and desired to be allowed some time before they should give a direct answer; which they promised to do in a few days, and took leave of the *Hettman*; he pursuing his march towards the King of *Sweden*, and they going directly to the Czar, giving him an account of the whole, and promising him fidelity, saying withal, that if they had been able, or had had any of their troops with them, they should have brought *Mazepa* prisoner to his majesty.

By this means, he only joined the King of *Sweden* with not much above four thousand men, who all returned the third day after, as is already said; so that none remained with *Mazepa* but forty or fifty persons, his domestic servants.

Upon

Upon this, the Czar ordered Prince *Menzekoff*, with a body of twenty thousand men, to march and attack *Baturin*, the residence of the *Hettman*: when *Menzekoff* came before that place, one part of the town resisted, but the rest opened their gates, without making any opposition: then Prince *Menzekoff* went straight to *Mazepa's* palace, and beset it, expecting to find his treasure, but was disappointed, *Mazepa*, having caused before-hand carry all that was valuable, together with a good quantity of provisions, to the King of *Sweden's* camp. Prince *Menzekoff* enraged at the disappointment, caused first pillage the whole town, then burnt it to ashes, to the ruin of many thousands of innocent families. .

I could learn no other particulars concerning *Mazepa*, but that he died at *Constantinople*; and that the Czar made pressing instances to the *Porte* to deliver him up; which, it is thought, would have been done, (tho' at first refused) had not his death interveened.

*End of the Seventh Book,*

THE



T H E

H I S T O R Y

O F

P E T E R the G R E A T,

E M P E R O R of R U S S I A.

---

B O O K VIII.

**T**HIS year 1708, the *Russian* Ambaf-  
fador at *London*, Mr. *Matucoff*, after  
having taken his last audience of the  
Queen, (as he sat in his coach in the even-  
ing, going to an assembly) was arrested at  
the instance of his banker for a debt not a-  
mounting to three hundred pounds *sterling*:  
he suspected the Ambassador would take  
journey without paying him. The thing  
taking air immediately, the *Portuguese*  
minister and others went to the tavern  
where the Ambassador was in custody, and  
relieved him by becoming bail for the  
sum, after he had been four hours in con-  
finement.

Mr.

BOOK VIII. Mr. *Matucoff* insisted on having satisfaction for the affront put upon the Czar his master, in his person; which if refused, he said, his master had it in his power to use reprisals on the Queen's minister Mr. *Whitworth* at *Moscow*, and on the *English* merchants, and trading people at *Archangel*.

Queen  
*Anne*  
gives the  
Czar satisfac-  
tion.

Whereupon the Queen caused imprison the banker; but there being hitherto no law in *England* for a case of this nature, it gave the Queen and parliament an opportunity to make one for the future in favour of foreign ministers: at the same time, her majesty wrote a letter to the Czar, excusing the harsh and unprecedented usage his Ambassador had met with; that she was willing to give all manner of satisfaction, giving him at the same time the title of Emperor; wherewith the Czar was softened, so that nothing further at this time happened upon it.

About the end of *December*, the Czar having advice from the Crown-generals of *Poland* and *Lithuania*, that *Stanislaus* with a considerable body of *Poles* and *Lithuanians*, together with four thousand *Swedes*, commanded by General *Craffow*, were gathering together, in order to attack them; and that if they were not speedily supplied with a strong body of troops, and money wherewith to pay the crown-army, which they



they wished might be sent them before the Book middle of *April*, or they should not be VIII. able to oppose the enemy. ~~~~~

Upon this the Czar, on the 26th of that month, ordered a body to march, consisting of near to ten thousand men, under the command of General *Goltz*, Lieutenant-general Prince *Galitzin*, and Major-general *Gordon*. This body marched from *Liledin*, notwithstanding the excessive cold, and arrived at *Kiow* in the beginning of *February*. General *Goltz* acquainted the crown-generals, that in case they were any ways straitned by the enemy, to direct their march towards the *Polish Ukraine*, and that as soon as he could be supplied with forage, he should march to their assistance.

Towards the end of *March* this body, consisting of five thousand eight hundred foot, and three thousand six hundred dragoons, marched from *Kiow* into *Great-Poland*, carrying not only provisions but forage along.

King *Stanislaus* rightly judged, that if this body were allowed to join the crown-generals, who were quartered in and about *Limberg*, it would not be an easy matter to deal with them: therefore it was determined in a council of war, to give battle to the *Russians*, and cut them to pieces first; then to march against the crown-generals.

BOOK General Goltz having intelligence thereof,  
VIII. marched in so good order, and so close,

that he was not much in pain about them;  
The Poles  
defeated  
by General  
Goltz. but as he marched near to a small place  
called *Podkamien*, in *Black-Russia*, it being

already afternoon, the enemy came in view,  
much superior in numbers to the *Russians*.  
Count *Sapega* and the Woywode of *Kiorw*  
led on the *Poles*, but being hot and impatient,  
they would not wait the up coming  
of the *Swedish* infantry, but attacked with  
abundance of resolution: they were however  
so warmly received by the *Russians*,  
that in less than half an hour they were  
beat back, and driven upon the infantry;  
so that all went into confusion. The  
*Swedes* retreated in all haste, and had not  
night come on, which put an end to the  
pursuit, they had been entirely overthrown:  
the *Russian* dragoons pursued them for half  
a league, and brought a Colonel with fifty  
private men prisoners into the camp. In this  
action were killed and wounded about four  
hundred of the enemy; a hundred prisoners  
taken during the action, besides what were  
taken in the pursuit; also fourteen standards,  
three pair of kettle-drums, and about  
two hundred waggons. The *Russians* had  
not above twenty-five men killed and  
wounded.

King

King *Stanislaus* and General *Craſſow*, BOOK  
 with his four thousand *Swedes*, together VIII.  
 with the diſperſed *Poles*, marched back in-  
 to *Great-Poland*: General *Goltz* ſtill pur- Stanislaus  
 ſuing after them, until he joined the crown- marches  
 generals at *Limberg*; where a council of back into  
 war being held, it was reſolved to purſue the Great Pon-  
*Swedes*, and endeavour to bring them to a  
 battle, or force them to leave the country.  
 Lieutenant-general Prince *Galitzin* was re-  
 called to his command of the guards, and  
 Major-general *Gordon* ordered to command  
 the infantry in *Poland*; where we ſhall  
 leave them, and return to the King of  
*Sweden*.

That Prince was diſappointed on all ſides,  
 not only of the ſuccours and provisions he  
 expected by General *Levenhaupt*, but alſo  
 by *Mazepa*, who (as is already ſaid) had  
 not fifty *Coffacks* remaining with him; ſo  
 that the King ſeeing all his great promiſes  
 come to nothing, judged at firſt that he  
 had impoſed on him, and for ſome days  
 kept him under guard: but at laſt, ſeeing  
 with what ſeverity the Czar puniſhed his  
 friends who had been in *Baturin*; as alſo,  
 the reducing that town to aſhes, he came  
 to have a better opinion of him: for, tho'  
 the *Coffacks* did not declare openly for the  
*Swedes*, yet under-hand they gave them all  
 aſſiſtance, by furniſhing provisions as far as

BOOK they were able: as for instance, at *Miklow*,  
 VIII. (where the Czar had ordered Colonel *Camp-*  
 ~~~~~ *bel* with his regiment) the *Cossacks* in the  
 night-time, being in concert with the King
 of *Sweden*, opened their gates and allowed
 four thousand *Swedes* to take possession of
 the town; where *Campbel* had enough to
 do to save himself, with the loss of two
 hundred of his dragoons, having made all
 the resistance he was able. This gives oc-
 casion for the following reflection: Had the
 King of *Sweden* entered *Russia* from *Livo-*
nia, either by *Novogrod* or *Pleskow*, the
 Czar would have been obliged to make use
 of all his force on that side; then the *Cos-*
sacks would have been at freedom to act in
 what shape they pleased: but his marching
 into the *Ukraine* undid all, the Czar still
 marching before him, into the heart of the
 country, with an army at least double his
 number, which so over-awed the *Cossacks*,
 that they durst not declare themselves, but
 were fain to ly dormant: for, if they had
 not, the Czar would have burnt and de-
 stroyed all their towns one after another,
 having the properest instrument in the world
 for such a purpose, namely Prince *Menze-*
koff, that being his province, where plunder
 was to be expected.

A new er-
 ror of the
 King of
Sweden.

The Czar
 successful
 in *Finland*.

The Czar was also successful this year
 1709 in *Finland*: a party of the *Swedes*,
 consisting

consisting of about twelve hundred men, BOOK
were beat by a detachment from the garri- VIII.
son of St. *Petersburgh*, with the loss of
near half their number: after which, Ma-
jor-general *Lubecker* with a body of four
thousand *Swedes*, made a descent on the
island *Ratusary*, but was repulsed by Major-
general *Bruce*, with the loss of five hun-
dred of his body killed and taken pri-
soners.

The King of *Sweden*, notwithstanding all the difficulties he laboured under, and the unexpressible cold, which rendered all warlike operations impracticable, directed his march towards *Rumnie* and *Konnotope*; where his army was so pinched for want of provisions, that a measure of barley-meal was sold at twenty-five guilders: thus were the *Swedes* starved with hunger and cold, whilst the *Russians* had plenty of every thing, and both officers and soldiers were well covered with furs; notwithstanding which, both armies as soon as the excessive cold abated a little, frequently encountered in strong parties.

General *Bower*, as the *Swedish* army lay betwixt *Belezowa* and *Mopozwa*, fell upon a party of them near to that last named place; where he killed and took prisoners near three hundred.

General

BOOK General *Renn* some days after, attacked
 VIII. another party of the *Swedes* near *Opozwa*,
 ~~~~~ beat them, killed and took prisoners about  
 two hundred.

The King of Sweden takes and demolishes *Vopruz*. The King of *Sweden* on his march from *Mopozwa* to *Hadish*, attacked a small town, ill fortified (as most of the *Cossacks'* towns are) called *Vopruz*; which place the Czar had garrisoned with two thousand *Russians*, under the command of Colonel *Farmer*, where, after the *Swedes* had been two several times repulsed, the commandant without hopes of succour, and not being in condition to stand a third assault, capitulated, and gave up the place; which the *Swedes* demolished. The *Russians* lost in the two attacks, a Major, six captains, nineteen lieutenants and ensigns, and about three hundred common soldiers. The *Swedes* sustained far greater loss, having two colonels, three majors, seven captains, thirteen lieutenants and ensigns killed, and about five hundred common soldiers killed and wounded: the *Swedes* attacked on all quarters. The garrison was allowed to march out with their arms, but no ammunition or provisions.

Marches  
 to *Pul-*  
*tawa*.

Though this could not but exceedingly weaken the *Swedes*, it made no impression on their King; he continued fixed in the notion of forcing his way to *Moscow*, and in order thereto,

thereto, he directed his march to *Pultawa*, Book much against the opinion of his generals, VIII. particularly Marshal *Renschild*, who advised him to return into *Black-Russia*, a plentiful country, there to recruit his army and get every thing ready to attack the Czar's dominions, if he could not be prevailed upon to offer an advantageous peace. This advice the King had no regard to, but followed *Mazepa's*, who told him, that in *Pultawa* he would find plenty of provisions, besides a considerable sum of money.

About this time both the King of *Sweden* and *Mazepa* wrote to King *Stanislaus*, desiring him to march into the *Ukraine* with all the forces he could raise, and all the provisions he possibly could bring along: *Mazepa* wrote further, that his presence in the *Ukraine* would encourage the *Cossacks* to break off from the Czar and join him; so that with their united forces they would compel the Czar to go into what terms they thought reasonable: but these letters fell into the Czar's hands, who after having read them, said smiling; 'He wished he were come, for against that time he hoped to be in condition to solemnize the feast of the three kings with a method.'

After the King of *Sweden* had demolished the fortifications of *Voprutz*, and consumed most of the provisions he had found in

BOOK in it, he marched towards *Pultawa*, a large  
 VIII. but not a strong place, in the *Ukraine*, be-  
 longing to the *Cossacks*, situated betwixt the  
 rivers *Pzel* and *Worskla*: here the Czar had  
 a garrison of four thousand *Russians*. The  
 King of *Sweden* invested and laid a formal  
 siege to it, there being in it a magazine of pro-  
 visions, &c. which he very much stood in  
 need of.

The preserving of *Pultawa* being of the  
 last consequence to the Czar, he marched  
 with his whole army to its relief, crossed  
 the river *Worskla* on the 20th of *June*, and  
 encamped within a league of the enemy,  
 who were advantageously and strongly en-  
 trenced. On the 25th, the *Russian* army  
 advanced within a short half league of the  
*Swedes*, entrenched as before: on the 26th,  
 the Czar accompanied with his principal  
 officers, together with a strong escort of his  
 guards, went and viewed the enemy, and  
 on his return made the necessary dispositi-  
 ons to give them battle next day. The  
 King of *Sweden* having in like manner dis-  
 posed matters on his side, was not only de-  
 termined to hazard the battle, but to make  
 the attack.

The battle  
 of *Pulta-  
 wa*.

The order of battle on the *Russian* side  
 was thus: the Czar, though he had never  
 taken the command upon him before, but  
 at the battle of *Lefno*, resolved to direct  
 matters



matters here in person; under him, were the generals, *Sheremetoff*, *Repnin* and *Bruce*: on his right were two Lieutenant-generals *Galitzin* and *Dolgoruky*; and on his left, General *Allart* and Lieutenant-general *Bel-ling*: the body consisted of fifteen regiments of foot and three regiments of grenadiers: this was the Emperor's particular command with the above-mentioned generals. The right wing consisting of eight regiments of dragoons, and three regiments of horse grenadiers, was commanded by two Lieutenant-generals *Renn* and *Bower*: the left wing, consisting of eight regiments of dragoons, with the Czarowich's regiment of guards, was commanded by Lieutenant-general *Hinsky*: Prince *Menzekoff* (General of the dragoons) had no particular station, but attended the Emperor as Aid-de-camp-General to receive his orders. All this was besides the reserve, which consisted of eighteen regiments more.

The *Swedish* order of battle was as follows: the body of the army consisted of twelve regiments of foot, together with the guards; the King in person at their head, though in little capacity to act, by reason of a wound which he had received in the foot some days before, in a skirmish with the *Cossacks*, near to *Pultawa*: under him commanded Marshal *Renschild*, General Count

BOOK *Levenhaupt*, with four Major-generals, *Rose*  
 VIII. *Lagercrown*, *Spar*, and *Stakelberg*: the right  
 wing consisting of twelve regiments of horse  
 and dragoons, was commanded by two Major-generals, *Creux* and *Slepenback*: the  
 left, consisting of ten regiments of horse and  
 dragoons, was commanded by the Major-generals *Hamilton* and *Spar*.

The King of *Sweden* perceiving plainly that the Emperor of *Russia* was now in good earnest determined to give him battle, resolved, as is already said, to make the attack: accordingly, on the 27th, before day, he ordered three regiments of foot, with four regiments of horse and dragoons, to fall upon the right of the *Russians*, and keep them in play until he could march up with the army. This advanced body was commanded by the two Major-generals, *Slepenback* and *Rose*, who marched according to orders, and attacked the right wing of the *Russians* so vigorously, that they gave way: the infantry at the same time mastered two redoubts, horse and foot pursuing the *Russians* so close and so far, that the *Swedes* were quite cut off from the body of their army; and at the same time, were so warmly plied by the cannon from the *Russian* entrenchments, that they were forced to retire to a low ground near a wood; whereupon, the Czar ordered Lieutenant-general  
*Hynsky*,

*Hynsky* with five regiments of dragoons, and Book  
 Lieutenant-general *Rintzel* with the like VIII.  
 number of foot, to fall upon them, which they  
 did so effectually, that after a sharp dispute  
 this body was entirely routed, and Major-  
 general *Slepenback* made prisoner. Major-  
 general *Rose* made his escape towards the  
 approaches, under a rising ground, where  
 he got into a redoubt with some few men,  
 thinking to save themselves; but being close-  
 ly pursued by General *Rentzel*, who having  
 surrounded the redoubt, sent a drum to  
 offer them quarters; after a few minutes  
 consideration they thought fit to accept  
 thereof, and surrendered at discretion.

By this time, the *Russian* infantry were  
 drawn up and formed at the head of  
 their trenches, leaving only within the lines  
 three battalions, under the command of the  
 Colonel of artillery, *Gunter*, together with  
 three thousand *Cossacks* to guard it, or act as  
 occasion required. At the same time, Colo-  
 nel *Golowin*, with three battalions more, was  
 ordered to take possession of a cloister near  
 the town, to preserve a communication  
 therewith.

The *Russian* army having quite altered  
 their first disposition, were now formed  
 in two lines; the first consisting of ten re-  
 giments of foot, with eight regiments of  
 dragoons on the right, and the like number

BOOK on the left, with twenty field-pieces; (the  
 VIII. second line much about the same with the first)  
 ~~~~~ moving forwards towards the enemy, who at  
 the same time marched close against them, and
 attacked with their wonted impetuosity; be-
 ing formed much after the same manner.

About nine o'clock in the morning the battle began, and was fought with much vigour and bravery on both sides for above the space of an hour, till at last the *Swedes* gave way, and were so broke, that there was no possibility of continuing the battle any longer, the *Russians* still gaining ground, cutting them down without mercy; so that their loss was incredible. The *Swedish* cavalry suffered considerably, but by far, not so much as the foot: they quitted the field in tolerable good order*.

This was so compleat a victory, that few the like has been known, and all obtained by the first line of the *Russian* army, the second never having been engaged. After the victory, it was not known what was become of the King of *Sweden*; he was not able to ride on horseback on account of his wound, and the litter in which he was carried, was found broke to pieces.

The

* *Voltaire* is in a very great mistake here, in affirming the *Swedes* to be but eighteen thousand, and that there was the like number of *Cossacks*; whereas they were truly full thirty-five thousand national *Swedes*, and no *Cossacks* at all.

The Emperor of *Russia* during the whole BOOK
action, behaved much like a General, with VIII.
all the vigour, bravery and magnanimity
imaginable: he was mounted on a *Turkish*
horse, mostly in the front; but moving here
and there, where his presence seemed most
necessary, and encouraging his troops.

The *Swedish* infantry who fought it to
the last, suffered exceedingly, there being
about eight thousand killed and wounded
on the field of battle, and in the pursuit
three thousand taken prisoners; amongst
whom were Marshal *Renschild*, two Major-
generals, *Stakelberg* and *Hamilton*, (*Slepen-
back* and *Rose* were taken before) four co-
lonels, viz. the Duke of *Wirtemberg*, *Apler-
green*, *Horn* and *Einshield*, eight lieuten-
ant-colonels, together with a vast many o-
ther inferior officers; four pieces of can-
non, an hundred and fifty colours and
standards, with above four thousand wag-
gons.

Count *Piper*, the King of *Sweden*'s prime
minister, seeing the battle lost, went to-
gether with the two secretaries, *Syderyclin* and
Duben, with all that belonged to the chan-
cery, into *Pultarwa*, and delivered them-
selves prisoners of war.

Of the *Russians*, belonging to the dra-
goons, were killed, Lieutenant-colonel *Lau*,
three majors, captains and subalterns, a-
bout

BOOK about fifty-five: wounded, Lieutenant-general VIII. *Renn*, two colonels, *Chamardin* and *Leont-cow*, three lieutenant-colonels, four majors, and about thirty captains and subalterns.

Of the infantry, killed, Brigadier *Fylenheim*, one Colonel, one Lieutenant-colonel; and about eighty more, majors, captains and subalterns; wounded, Brigadier *Pollonsky*, three colonels, *Lacy*, *Inglis* and *Wolcow*; lieutenant-colonels, majors, captains and subalterns, about an hundred and forty: the whole killed and wounded, amounting not to above five thousand nine hundred fifty and three.

The *Swedish* army being after this manner routed, Lieutenant-general Prince *Gallitzin*, with the guards all on horseback, and Lieutenant-general *Bower*, with four thousand dragoons, were ordered off different ways in pursuit thereof. Prince *Menzekoff* marched next day with five thousand dragoons more, who being joined by *Bower*, came up with the enemy at *Pere-wolochin* (on the 30th); where they found them drawing up on the decline of a rising ground, near to the *Boristhenes*, and were informed by a *Swedish* quarter-master, who was brought prisoner to them, that the King of *Sweden*, together with *Mazepa*, two major-generals, *Horn* and *Spar*, with about five hundred of his best mounted troops,

troops, had crossed the *Boristhenes* about three hours before; having left the command of the army to General Count *Levenhaupt*. Whereupon, Prince *Menzekoff* marched up nearer the enemy, and sent to the commanding General, a Brigadier, to offer him quarters if he would surrender with the troops under his command, prisoners of war, since it was not in his power to make better of it; informing him at the same time, that the whole *Russian* army were on their march with design to attack him; and that if he made any further opposition they might all expect to be put to the sword. BOOK VIII.

General *Levenhaupt*, after some more than two hours deliberation, on purpose to give his master the King of *Sweden* the more time to get off, sent Major-general *Cruss*, Colonel *Duker*, Lieutenant-colonel *Trautsedder*, and General-Adjutant *Douglafs*, to treat with the Prince of a surrender; which was agreed to on the following terms: that General Count *Levenhaupt*, together with all the troops under his command, generals, officers, and common soldiers, should give themselves up prisoners of war to the Emperor of *Russia*, on these conditions:

First, That they should deliver up themselves, horse and accoutrements, and continue prisoners of war until they should be relieved,

General
Leven-
haupt sur-
renders to
Prince
Menze-
koff.

BOOK relieved, either by ransom or exchange;
 VIII. their cloaths and all they had about them
 to remain theirs unsearched.


Secondly, Their generals and officers should be allowed their equipages and baggage; and, that in case of their not being ransomed or exchanged, on the conclusion of a peace betwixt *Russia* and *Sweden*, they should all be set free without more ado; in the mean time to be well used; and, that if any of the officers under a Colonel, were desirous to go to *Sweden* on their own private affairs, they should be allowed, on obliging themselves to return in a specified time.

Thirdly, The artillery, arms, ammunition, colours, standards, instruments of war, military chest, plate and treasure belonging to the King of *Sweden*, should be delivered up to the Czar.

Fourthly, That the rebellious *Cossacks*, if any were, should likewise be delivered up: and for the more security, this agreement was signed by the commanding generals on both sides at *Perewolochin* the 30th day of *June* 1709, signed *Menzekoff*, *C. Levenhaupt*.

There was an additional article, that the generals and officers should be allowed their servants, as well as other equipages; the commissaries, secretaries, almoners, physicians, chirurgeons and regiment-writers, the like.

After

After this agreement, sixteen thousand Book
horse and dragoons gave themselves up pri- VIII.
soners of war, to nine thousand *Russians*; 
so far matters were changed. But it is to
be considered, that the poor *Swedes* had
not one mouthful of bread, nor had they
made any tolerable meal for three days be-
fore: all the prisoners, civil and military,
amounted to sixteen thousand seven hundred
and ninety-five. The whole killed and ta-
ken prisoners on this occasion, amounted to
about thirty-two thousand men, besides those
who made their escape during the battle;
and after, which came to some thousands
more, (most whereof were taken by the
Cossacks) all native *Swedes*.

Lieutenant-general *Bower* crossed the *Boristhenes* with a body of two thousand dra-
goons, and the like number of *Cossacks*, in
pursuit of the King of *Sweden*; but *Mazepa*,
who knew the country, conducted him
through by-ways to *Oczacow*, as much for
his own safety as the King's. The Gover-
nor of that town made difficulty to allow
them passage over the *Bog*, till he should
get the commanding *Bassa's* orders from
Bender.

The King was scarcely got over the river
when the *Russians* came up, and in his
sight, took some hundreds of his small
company prisoners: *Bower* having no or-

BOOK ders to proceed further, returned with the
VIII. prisoners to *Pultawa*.

As *Oczacow* was but a small ill fortified place, the King of *Sweden* did not think himself safe in it, but set forward to *Bender*, where he was received by the Bassa with all possible respect.

The King
of Sweden
goes to
Bender.

The
Grand
Seignior
refuses to
deliver
him up.

As soon as General *Bower* returned to *Pultawa*, and informed the Czar of the King of *Sweden*'s passing into *Turky*, his majesty forthwith dispatched a commissary to *Constantinople*, requiring the Grand Seignior to deliver up the King of *Sweden*, but particularly his rebellious subject *Mazepa*; which the *Sultan*, by advice of the *Mufty*, would by no means yield to, it being a rule in the *Alcoran* to grant protection and refuge to all who repair to them in distress.

The *Swedish* prisoners were well used, the Czar causing the generals dine with him: amongst other discourse he asked Marshal *Renschild*, how strong their army might be before the engagement? The Marshal answered, that none but the King knew that exactly, but that he believed they might amount in whole to about thirty-five thousand men. The Emperor asked further, how they could adventure to advance so far into an enemy's country, at so great a distance from their own, with such small numbers? *Renschild* replied, that they were not always

ways consulted, but obliged to submit to Book the King's orders, though often amongst VIII. themselves, they were of different sentiments: whereupon the Emperor presented him with a sword, telling him at the same time that it was in regard of his fidelity.

After dinner the Emperor caused distribute the *Swedish* generals amongst his own: Marshal *Rensbild* was given to Marshal *Shermetoff*, Count *Piper* to the chancellor, *Golowkin*, the Duke of *Wirtemberg*, to Prince *Menzekoff*, General *Stakelberg* to General *Renn*; and so on with the rest.

Some time after the battle of *Pultawa*, the Czar having laid aside all resentment against King *Augustus* (whether really or seemingly I know not), wrote to him after the King of *Sweden* had entered into the *Ukraine*, to return into *Poland* with his *Saxon* troops, in order to keep up his party, several of them having fallen off and joined his adversary King *Stanislaus*: whereupon, King *Augustus* had a meeting with the King of *Denmark*; and they, together with the Czar's minister, entered into a new alliance offensive and defensive, against the King of *Sweden*; who had about this time published a manifesto inviting the *Cossacks* to break off from the Czar, and to join their good *Hettman*, *Mazepa*, promising to free them from the oppression of the *Russians*, and

A new alliance betwixt the Czar, the King of *Denmark* and King *Augustus*.

BOOK make them hence forward a free and independent people.

~~~~~  
 The Czar publishes a manifesto in opposition to the King of Sweden's. This obliged the Czar to publish a counter manifesto, wherein he made appear to the *Cossacks* that the King of *Sweden* had no other design, but to make them slaves to the traitor *Mazepa*; which he would take care to prevent, and continue them always a free people; that the old men still living, had not forgot the cruelties and hardships they had met with from the *Poles*, until his father of glorious memory, Czar *Alexis Michaelowich*, took them under his protection; with a great deal more to this purpose, which would be tedious to insert.

The Duke of Wirtemberg's death. The Czar shewed abundance of regard to all the *Swedish* officers, but in particular to the Duke of *Wirtemberg*; he not only caused deliver him his sword, but also give him his full liberty: but this young Prince, partly through cold, fatigue and bad accommodation, on his return to *Germany*, sickened and died of a violent fever at *Zubno* in *Volinia*, where his Czarish majesty caused him be interred, with all the magnificence and state due to his rank; sent his heart to the dutchess his mother, with his compliments of condolance, by Colonel *Bruckindal*, one of his General-adjutants. The Dutcheß to preserve to futurity the memory of so great clemency, and generosity;

ty; caused erect at *Stutgard* a monument of Book  
marble, which in so far as it regards the VIII.  
Emperor *Peter* the Great, is as follows: ~

*Magnus enim Moscoviæ Cæsar*  
P E T R U S A L E X I U S,  
*Virtutis in hoste quoque æstimator,*  
*Principi simul ac viso*  
*Libertatem mox reddidit,*  
*Omnemque dum vixit habuit honorem:*  
*Et postquam vivere desiit,*  
*Ardenti febre ipso in itinere correptus,*  
*Fatum tanti principis doluit,*  
*Splendidasque ei exequias fieri jussit*  
*Dubnoviæ in Volhynia. &c.*

After the above surprising victory, there Great re-  
appeared all over *Russia* exceeding great re-joicings  
joicings; and as soon as the accounts there- for the  
of came to the Czarowich at *Moscow*, he victory at  
caused invite a great many persons of the *Pultawa*.  
highest rank to sup with him; where, after  
the healths of the Emperor and generals had  
gone round, a magnificent fire-work was  
presented, which continued till past mid-  
night. Next day all the foreign ministers  
went to court, and made their compliments;  
where they were entertained: then a gene-  
ral festival was appointed all over the city,  
to

BOOK to continue fourteen days, during which  
 VIII. time, the women were allowed to ring the  
 ~~~~~ bells over all the churches of the town; a  
 thing never permitted but on the week before *Easter*, and until *Quasemodo*.

As often as the Governor of *Moscow*, Prince *Yagarin* entertained, (which was frequently) he bestowed on the populace, malt-spirits, beer and mead, in abundance. Above the great entry of his palace, the Emperor's effigies was erected with the following inscription illuminated.

Invidiissimo & felicissimo imperatori,

PETRO magno, principi optimo,

Pio, felici; qui proprio Marte Swecos

Omnes ad Pultauam & Boristinem

Fudit. D. 27. Junii 1709.

The *Russian* ministers at foreign courts were not deficient in making their best appearance, especially at the *Hague*, and at the courts of *Denmark* and *Prussia*.

But to return to the Czar and his victorious army: after the battle of *Pultawa*, a great council of war was held, wherein it was resolved, that all the regiments both of foot and dragoons, should be forthwith recruited, and the army divided into three bodies; that Marshal *Sheremetoff*, with thirty

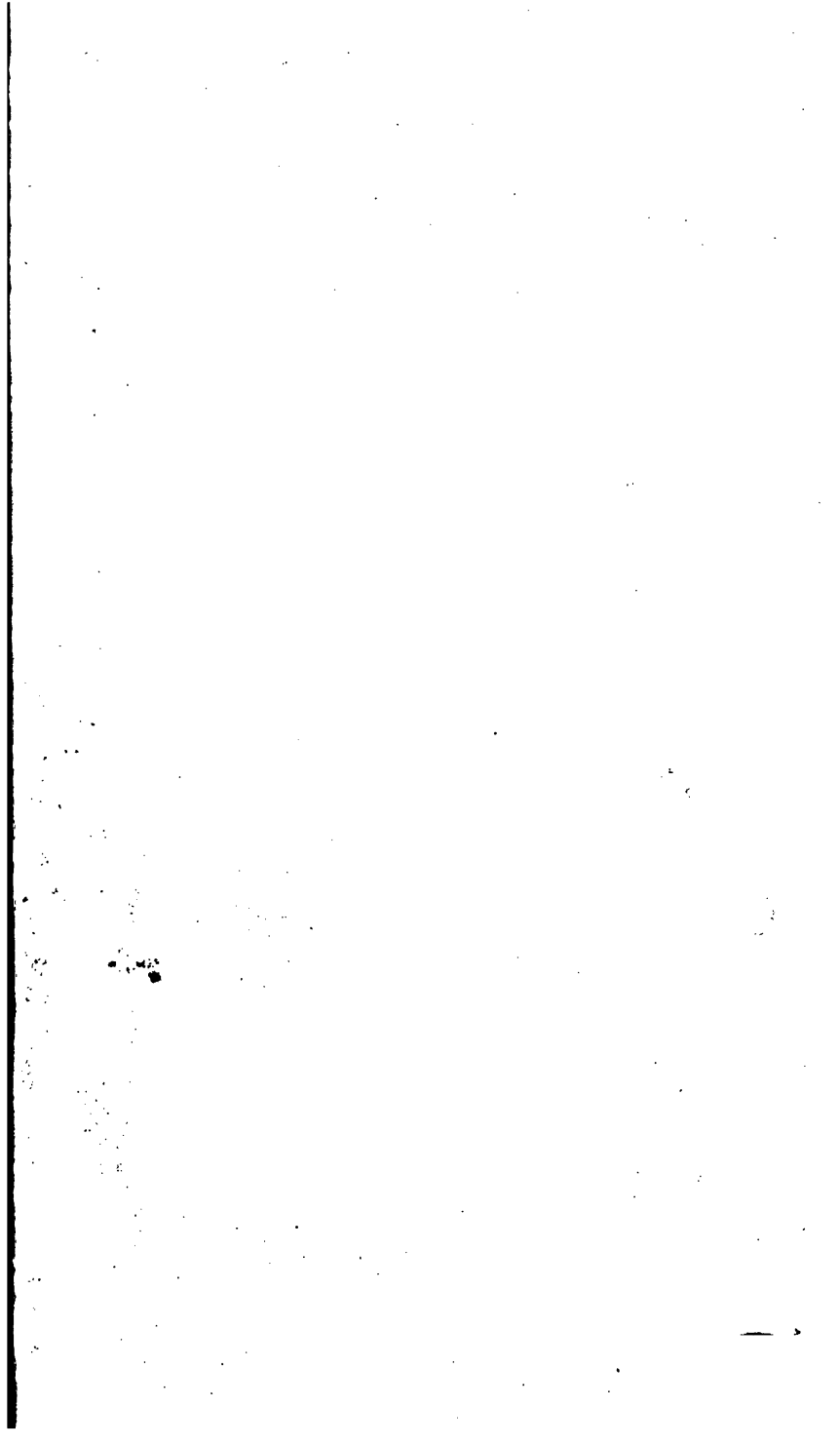
ty thousand men, should march through *Lithuania* into *Livonia*; Lieutenant-general Prince *Galitzen* should attend the Czar into *Poland*, with the guards and ten thousand dragoons; General *Allart*, with General Prince *Repnin*, should continue on the frontiers of *Volinia*, with the regiments both of foot and dragoons, which had suffered most in the action, to observe the motions of the *Turks* and *Tartars*, and to keep all right amongst the *Cossacks*.

To go back a little into *Poland*, General *Goltz*, together with the crown-generals, about the middle of *May*, marched from *Limberg* in pursuit of King *Stanislaus* and General *Craffow*, but could never come up with them: at last, finding themselves so hard put to it, and hunted up and down, General *Craffow* with his *Swedes* retired into *Swedish Pomerania*. King *Stanislaus* continued still in *Poland*, but rather incognito than at the head of a body of troops to oppose his enemies: after which, General *Goltz* marched back into *Black-Russia*, to a place called *Uganow*, where he lay encamped until he got the accounts of the battle of *Pultarwa*.

Stanislaus
lurks in
Poland.

END of the First VOLUME.

02
414



ca
414

